



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

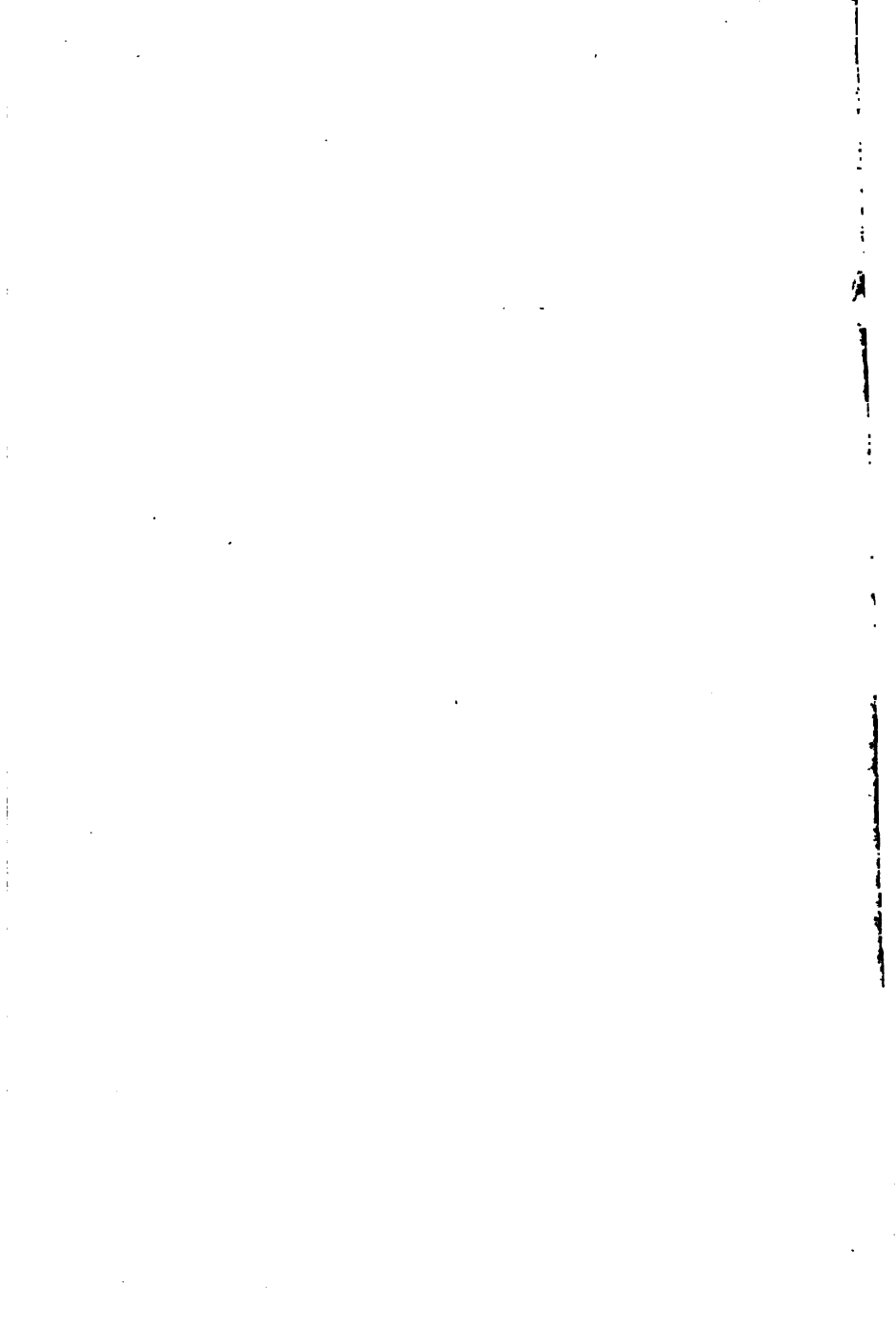
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

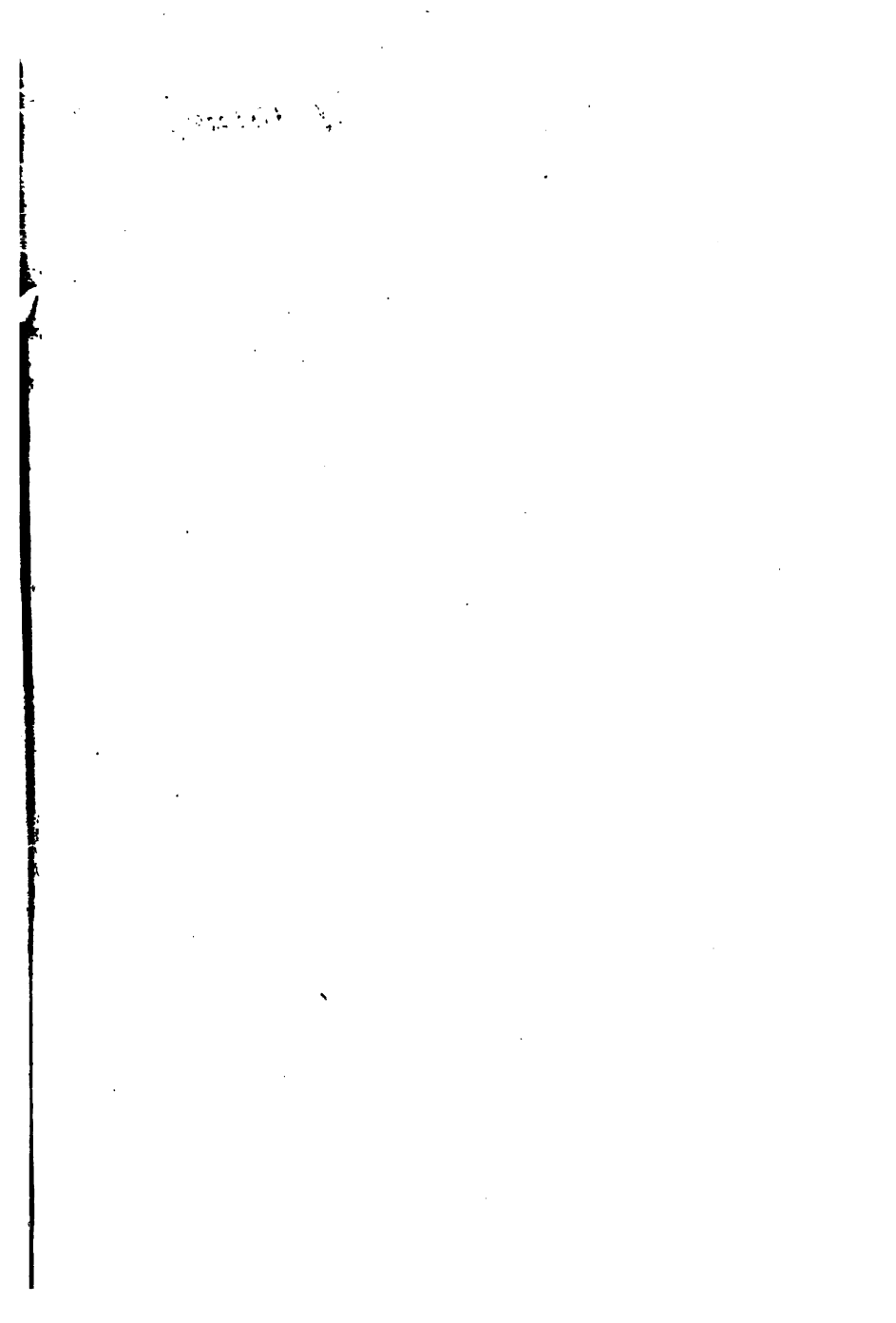
**HARVARD UNIVERSITY**

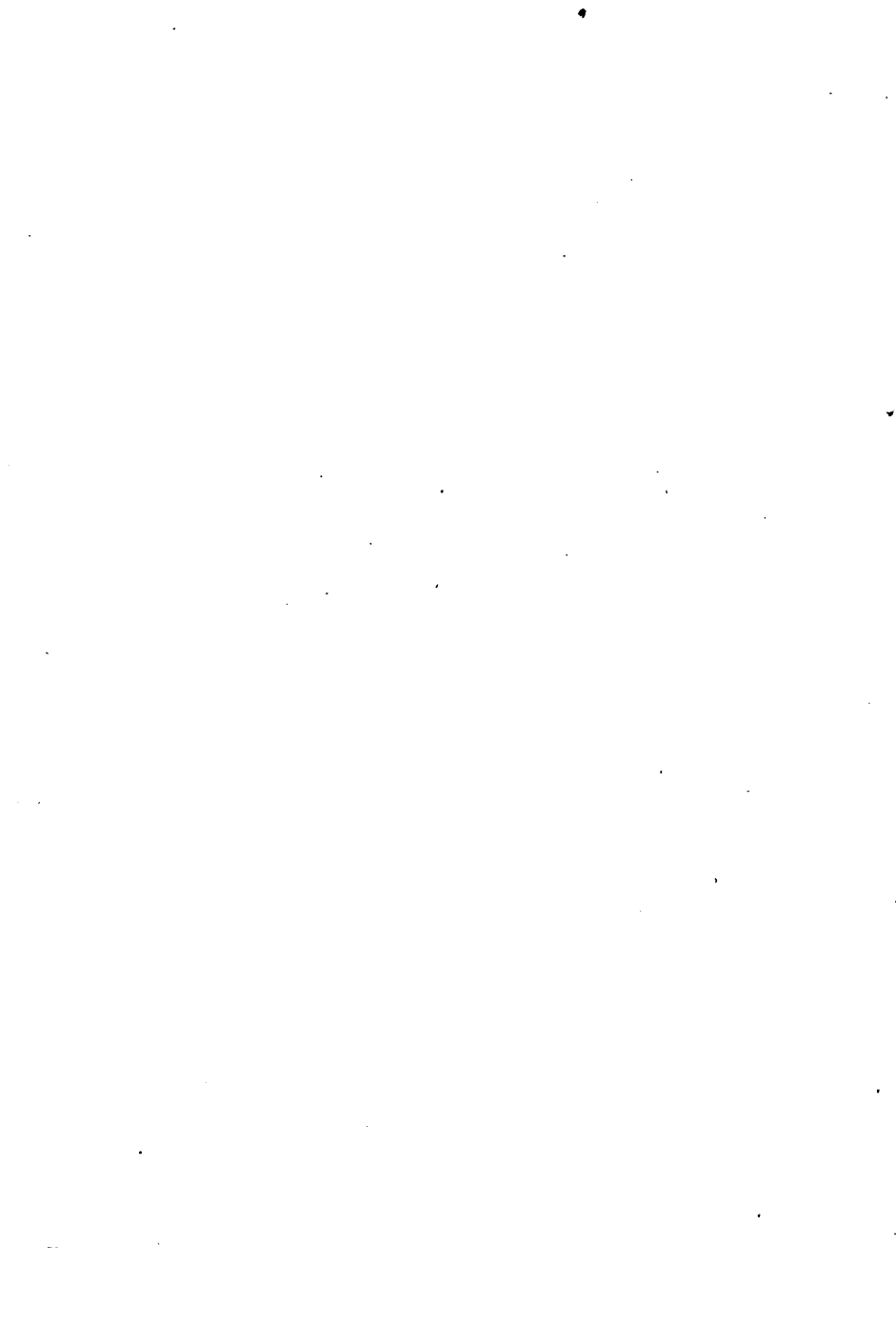


**LIBRARY OF THE  
GRADUATE SCHOOL  
OF EDUCATION**

34  
1245







## **Historical Sources in Schools**





©

# Historical Sources in Schools

REPORT TO THE  
NEW ENGLAND HISTORY TEACHERS'  
ASSOCIATION —

BY

A Select Committee *on historical materials*

CHARLES DOWNER HAZEN, *Chairman*

EDWARD GAYLORD BOURNE

MAX FARRAND

SARAH M. DEAN

ALBERT BUSHNELL HART

New York  
THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

LONDON: MACMILLAN & CO., LTD.

1902

*All rights reserved*

HARVARD UNIVERSITY  
GRADUATE SCHOOL OF EDUCATION  
MONROE C. GUTMAN LIBRARY

Z6201  
.N54  
Copy 2

OCT 24 1902

COPYRIGHT, 1902, BY  
THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

Set up and Printed May, 1902.

PRESS OF  
THE NEW ERA PRINTING COMPANY  
LANCASTER, PA.

# Table of Contents.

## Part I.

### USEFULNESS OF SOURCES.

§ 1.	The Fields of Study . . . . .	1
§ 2.	Sources as a Foundation . . . . .	5
§ 3.	Sources as a Stimulus . . . . .	8
§ 4.	Sources as a Discipline . . . . .	11
§ 5.	Cautions and Limitations . . . . .	15

## Part II.

### ANCIENT HISTORY.

§ 6.	Selection and Bibliography . . . . .	19
§ 7.	Collections of Sources in Ancient History . . . . .	21
§ 8.	List of available Sources in Ancient History . . . . .	23
§ 9.	References to the Sources of Ancient History arranged by Periods . . . . .	34
§ 10.	The Epic Age of Greek History, 1000— 700 B. C. . . . .	34
§ 11.	The Early History of Athens (before the Persian Wars) . . . . .	35
§ 12.	The Early History of Sparta . . . . .	38
§ 13.	Lyric Poetry . . . . .	38

§ 14.	The Graeco-Persian Wars . . . . .	38
§ 15.	The Age of Cimon . . . . .	39
§ 16.	The Age of Pericles . . . . .	39
§ 17.	The Peloponnesian War . . . . .	41
§ 18.	The Tyranny at Syracuse . . . . .	42
§ 19.	Spartan Supremacy, 404-371 B. C. . . . .	42
§ 20.	Theban Supremacy, 371-362 B. C. . . . .	44
§ 21.	Macedonian Supremacy . . . . .	45
§ 22.	Alexander the Great . . . . .	45
§ 23.	Early Roman History . . . . .	46
§ 24.	The Conquest of the Mediterranean . . . . .	48
§ 25.	Civil Dissensions, 146-31 B. C. . . . .	50
§ 26.	The Augustan Age and the Early Empire . . . . .	52
§ 27.	The Later Empire . . . . .	56
§ 28.	The Early Germans . . . . .	58

## Part III.

### MEDIÆVAL AND MODERN EUROPEAN HISTORY.

§ 29.	Selection and Bibliography . . . . .	60
§ 30.	Collections of Sources in Mediæval and Modern History . . . . .	62
§ 31.	List of available Sources in Mediæval and Modern History . . . . .	66
§ 32.	References to the Sources of Mediæval and Modern History arranged by Periods . . . . .	77
§ 33.	The Church in the Middle Ages . . . . .	77
§ 34.	Mohammedanism . . . . .	79
§ 35.	Charles the Great . . . . .	81

## Table of Contents

vii

§ 36.	The Crusades . . . . .	84
§ 37.	Chivalry, . . . . .	86
§ 38.	Literature during the Middle Ages	87
§ 39.	Education during the Middle Ages	90
§ 40.	The Renaissance . . . . .	90
§ 41.	The Reformation . . . . .	96
§ 42.	The French Monarchy . . . . .	99
§ 43.	The French Revolution, 1789-1795 .	104
§ 44.	The Napoleonic Era . . . . .	107
§ 45.	Nineteenth Century Continental His- tory . . . . .	112

## Part IV.

### ENGLISH HISTORY.

§ 46.	Selection and Bibliography . . . . .	117
§ 47.	Collections of Sources in English History .	120
§ 48.	List of available Sources in English History .	130
§ 49.	References to the Sources of English History arranged by Periods . . . . .	142
§ 50.	The Pre-Norman Period, 55 B. C.- 1066 A. D. . . . .	142
§ 51.	The Norman Period, 1066-1154 .	147
§ 52.	Constitutional Development, 1154-1337	152
§ 53.	The Fourteenth and Fifteenth Cen- turies . . . . .	157
§ 54.	The Reformation in England .	160
§ 55.	Elizabeth and James I, 1558-1625 .	162
§ 56.	The Puritan Revolution, 1625-1660 .	166

§ 57.	From the Restoration to the Revolution, 1660-1689 . . . . .	170
§ 58.	The Eighteenth and Nineteenth Centuries . . . . .	174

## Part V.

### AMERICAN HISTORY.

§ 59.	Selection and Bibliography . . . . .	177
§ 60.	Collections of Sources in American History . . . . .	179
§ 61.	Collections of Sources for Class Use . . . . .	179
§ 62.	Collections of Sources for General Reference . . . . .	183
§ 63.	List of Available Sources in American History. . . . .	188
§ 64.	References to the Sources of American History arranged by Periods . . . . .	200
§ 65.	Basis of American History . . . . .	201
§ 66.	Spanish Discoveries . . . . .	202
§ 67.	English Discoveries and Pre-colonial Explorers . . . . .	204
§ 68.	French, Swedish, and Dutch Voyages and Settlements . . . . .	206
§ 69.	Conditions of English Colonization, . . . . .	207
§ 70.	The Southern Colonies . . . . .	209
§ 71.	The New England Colonies . . . . .	211
§ 72.	The Middle Colonies . . . . .	214
§ 73.	Colonial Government . . . . .	215
§ 74.	Colonial Society . . . . .	221
§ 75.	The Struggle with France . . . . .	225
§ 76.	The Causes and Preliminaries of the Revolution . . . . .	226

# Table of Contents

ix

§ 77.	The Revolution, 1775-1783 . . . . .	229
§ 78.	The Confederation . . . . .	232
§ 79.	The Federal Constitution . . . . .	234
§ 80.	The Organization of the Government and the Federal Administration . . . . .	237
§ 81.	The Administrations of Jefferson and Madison	241
§ 82.	The War of 1812 . . . . .	243
§ 83.	The period of National Organization, 1815- 1829 . . . . .	244
§ 84.	Jacksonian Democracy and Administration, 1820-1841 . . . . .	246
§ 85.	Slavery and Anti-Slavery, 1835-1845 . . . . .	249
§ 86.	The Crisis of Territorial Slavery, 1845-1860 . . . . .	251
§ 87.	The Causes and Beginnings of the Civil War.	257 —
§ 88.	The Civil War, 1861-1865 . . . . .	259 —
§ 89.	Reconstruction, 1865-1875 . . . . .	263 —
§ 90.	Economic and Political Questions, 1875-1900.	265
§ 91.	Social Questions . . . . .	266
§ 92.	Foreign Relations and Colonization, 1865- 1900 . . . . .	268





## Part I.

### Usefulness of Sources.

#### § 1. The Fields of Study.

THE present volume has grown out of a report submitted by the Committee on Historical Materials to the New England History Teachers' Association at the April meeting in 1900. Believing that a list of sources available for the study of history in the lower schools, carefully compiled and critically estimated, would be of direct value to teachers and students, we essayed the task of making such a list. We have endeavored to cover the various courses ordinarily offered in the secondary schools, but we do not imagine that our list is exhaustive or that our appreciations will be undisputed. Whatever unevenness or differences of treatment may be observed in the different sections of the book is necessitated by the varying character of the material with which we have had to deal.

The committee has thought it desirable to follow for its purposes the divisions of fields of history recommended by the Committee of Seven ; that is, four

courses of Ancient History, Mediæval and Modern European History, English History, and American History, in the order named. The amount and value of the original material available for secondary schools will vary greatly in the different branches. The wealth of material will be most marked in the history of our own country ; and in this field, also, a certain class of documents, constitutional or legal, may be used more freely than in other branches, because of the direct personal connection and interest of the pupil. English History will find itself well provided with sources that are accessible to any reader ; and in this field may be effectively used some of the great constitutional charters of the people, as well as more personal and less formal documents.

In Ancient History, on the other hand, although the material that is easily accessible in translation is very great, and its value, as a basis of fact and as illustration, is high, it is subject to a judgment based on different criteria from those which apply to modern times. In the first place, the formal ancient historians are in many cases not contemporary at all, but relate events which occurred hundreds of years before their birth, without leaving sufficient written records to establish them. In the second place, the best historians, as Thucydides, do not attempt to make exact quotations and seldom refer to their authorities. In the third place, some of the old

writers, as Livy, lacked a critical spirit and in many cases failed to distinguish between fact and fable; their aim was to interest or to produce an artistic effect—as Plutarch—or to laud a great family—as Livy—rather than to ascertain exact truth from conflicting testimony. Hence the teacher must know something of the personalities of the writers in order to use them. On the other hand, we have a most valuable body of sources outside the professional historians, in the orators, the poets, the satirists, and the dramatists. The teacher must, of course, make wise selections, for pupils can hardly be left to browse at will.

In the field of Mediæval and Modern European History the difficulty is of quite another kind, namely, the paucity of material. Not that sources are lacking to illuminate the field; but those sources, mostly Latin, French and German, to some extent Italian, have never been translated into English. When we have mentioned Henderson's *Historical Documents of the Middle Ages*, and the excellent but few and scattered *Reprints and Translations* of the University of Pennsylvania, we have practically completed the list of collections of sources, in English, bearing on the history of Europe. There are, of course, other books—biographies or histories of special periods—that contain more or less contemporary material, such as the lives of Petrarch and

## 4                      Usefulness of Sources

Erasmus, lately published by Robinson and Emerton. Then, too, there is a large class of material which the advanced student would not ignore, but which the beginner can hardly find profitable ; of this class French memoirs are a representative. Memoirs, while a true source, are less valuable and are more difficult to use ; one must know much of the personal equation, one must already have a true sense of proportion in order to be able to use unedited memoirs wisely, and this implies a considerable historical knowledge and a nice historical sense. Then, too, the mere mass and detail of these materials excludes them to a large degree from secondary schools. There are wide gaps, then, in the history of Europe which cannot be studied by the method of which we speak, because the sources are in a foreign language. Here is an admirable field that should be cultivated by scholars who wish to add to the historical culture of the country. We are not likely to have too many source-books ; and that there is material at hand lending itself easily to the fabrication of such aids is shown by the excellence of several German and Swiss *Quellenbücher*, which might easily serve as models.

English and American history both deal with one combined race, speaking one mother tongue. The sources are therefore only too numerous, and far outnumber the secondary writings. In these two

fields the committee has simply chosen to its best ability out of the great mass of available sources.

### § 2. Sources as a Foundation.

That some use of sources can and should be made in earlier history courses, we believe for many reasons. One is, that it is in the very nature of the subject. History is based upon documents ; and the teaching that does not raise this fact into prominence in the mind of the student is as radically defective as the teaching of literature would be, if it ignored the masterpieces and fixed attention upon the criticisms of the author of the text-book ; as the teaching of botany would be if it never called attention to the actual life and characteristics of plants, but left the student with the impression that the book containing the information was the heart and kernel of the matter. Every subject must be so taught that its very essence, its most native features, shall somehow be apparent. To make the full significance of history evident to young people, would no doubt be extremely difficult, perhaps impossible ; but an impression may be clearly left, and the interests of truth and good faith demand that it should be left—the pupil should realize that there is something behind the book, some material, some process, a knowledge of which is fundamental and imperative.

As Mr. Freeman says, the teacher of history must not forget the most solid business of his calling : " He must ever bear in mind himself and he must ever strive to impress on the minds of others that the most ingenious and most eloquent of modern historical discourses can after all be nothing more than a comment on a text." " History," says Lord Acton, " to be above evasion and dispute must stand on documents, not on opinions." " The historian," says M. Langlois, " works with documents. Documents are the traces which have been left by the thoughts and actions of men of former times. Of these thoughts and actions, however, very few leave any visible traces, and these traces, when there are any, are seldom durable ; an accident is enough to efface them. Now every thought and every action that has left no visible traces, or none but what have since disappeared, is lost for history ; is as though it had never been. For want of documents the history of immense periods in the past of humanity is destined to remain forever unknown. For there is no substitute for documents ; no documents, no history."

This great truth, accepted as an axiom by every competent teacher of history, must certainly be conveyed to the class. To maintain this principle is not at all to argue that in the attempt to impart historical information nothing but sources should be

used ; we believe distinctly that their use in secondary schools must be limited, and be strictly subordinate to that of texts. The large part of even the specialist's knowledge of history must be got at second hand ; the field is too wide for personal cultivation of more than a mere plot, on the part even of one who devotes his life to this branch of study. How much more necessary are secondary books to the boy or the girl who has never before surveyed the field, and who for the first time hears the very names of the world's great heroes and learns of the movements they inspired or directed or exploited ! Training in the sources is not the chief purpose of the teacher. To give the general survey, to open up the subject, should be his aim ; and limitations of time, as well as the immaturity of his classes, will forever prevent his making the use of sources the dominant note in his teaching. But they should be used enough to reveal clearly the nature of the subject, to show how only from the written fragments of the past can the past be reconstructed, to show how the text-book has actually been prepared, what is the nature of its authority, what the use that should be made of its conclusions. The use of sources is but a means to an end, and that end is historical culture ; and historical culture is not consistent with the belief that the writings of this or that author are the final authority.

### § 3. Sources as a Stimulus.

We believe, further, that some place should be found for the use of original material in the history courses of our secondary schools, because those courses may thereby be made more interesting. After all, our business as teachers of history is to arouse an interest in the past; and a legitimate as well as a successful method of doing this lies in the proper use of certain kinds of sources. The craving to get the truth at first hand is natural with most children. They think definitely, concretely, and have a desire to get to the bottom of things. This quality is dulled by wishy-washy fiction and diluted "Stories of History" and by the mechanical repetition of another's phrases and ideas; it is stimulated and encouraged by genuine, vivid, historical narration and description. For younger pupils the references must be chiefly to material in which the personal element is strong. In American history, and to a lesser degree in English, constitutional documents can profitably be used, because of their close individual appeal.

In the first place, students are surprisingly quick to appreciate and to retain the impression made by the individuality of style in original material, so fresh, so native, so different from the formal and lifeless style of many text-books. From Plutarch



to the autobiography of Franklin, students remember better and understand better, what the noted person "really wrote himself." If the form is quaint and unusual, the impression is even stronger, provided the material is simple and fresh.

Take as an illustration Luther's *Table-Talk*, published in a cheap paper edition by Cassell. There is very little in it which could not be used with profit by young pupils. It reveals the character of the man clearly, his ideas of nature and of religion apart from theology; it opens up a mind of a quaintly allegorical turn. The accounts of the journeys to Worms and Augsburg, and of the proceedings there, are interesting as records of events of great importance. Luther's personal limitations and those which he shared with his time are shown by his own words; and the style is so simple and clear that even immature pupils would find no difficulty with it.

Or again, take *The Boy's Froissart*, as edited by Lanier or Newbolt, a book essentially interesting and valuable in its graphic accounts of the customs of men in peace and in war, and in its presentation of the spirit of an active, stirring, adventurous chivalry, practical, direct, and strong. The boy who loves his "Waverly Novels" will love his Froissart, "whose chapters inspire me," says Scott, "with more enthusiasm than even

poetry itself." Froissart's descriptions of Crécy and Poitiers are masterpieces which have rarely been equalled.

Again, the use of sources, properly guided, tends to make history a problem and not an act of memory; to make the student a discoverer and not a repeater of another's discovery; to call out the activity, alertness, inquisitiveness—in short, the individuality—of a boy or a girl. Give a letter of Erasmus, and then ask the pupil what kind of man Erasmus was, judged from this example; what the character of his mind—conservative or radical, conventional or free, generous or suspicious, poetical or practical; what his attitude toward Luther; what his feeling for the church—and you have him grappling, awkwardly perhaps, but vigorously, with questions that seem alive and real and definite. The subject takes on a new animation for him. Give him a letter of a crusader, and, if it is a well-chosen letter, the sense of the reality of those movements across a continent will be strongly reinforced; the color, the atmosphere, the motive, the hope, the disappointment, all the natural and human elements, come out more vividly than in the ordinary text-book. This, of course, presupposes a careful choice in the material laid before him; for there were dull and verbose and pointless letter-writers in bygone days as in ours.

Any librarian will say that boys and girls eagerly read historical romances. There is material more true, and just as spirited, revealing actual men and women, vigorous and vivacious, passing through as interesting experiences as those of fiction. This material, by reason of its human element and because it smacks of life, will appeal to the same youth. Nor are they in danger of feeling the dull weight of so-called "university methods," of the galley work of the German seminary, in reading these vivid and brisk accounts. We must be sure that they are interesting, that they have the unmistakable mark of reality, that they are instinct with "the magic of life"—and there is enough such material, easily accessible, to enliven any course now given in our schools. If examples be needed, read Raleigh's account of the last fight of the "Revenge," Asser's *Life of Alfred*, or Porter's account of the gunboat campaign on the Mississippi.

#### §4. Sources as a Discipline.

Again, we advocate the use of sources as a valuable intellectual training. The thorough comprehension of an individual record, the penetration beneath the surface, behind the forms, to the active life to which the record bears witness, is not an act of memory merely or largely, but an act of interpre-

tation, involving some of the most important functions of the mind. What is the thought, what the feeling, what the character, that find expression in this letter or speech or editorial, and what the purpose too? All this is not as plain as reading; inquisitiveness, patience, imagination, must all be invoked to get at the real and baffling essence of the matter. Reasoning is called into play to determine what may correctly be deduced from the statements before us. What is all this but the exercise of judgment? It is not so much a question of the accumulation of facts as of seizing the true nature and significance of the facts recorded in the piece before us. "The power to do this," says Professor Mace in his very suggestive book, *Method in History*, "has direct and important bearing on the affairs of every-day life. What else are men doing who meet each other in the various walks of life? Men contend or men coöperate in the conduct of all the institutions of human society. But to do either well—intelligently and successfully—they must penetrate to ideas, motives, and plans, through the deeds of one another. How poorly we judge of the conduct of men and of society! Surely there is need that the teachers of history shall recognize and utilize the capacity, in their own subject, to confer upon the student this peculiar guiding power."

The study of sources ought also to inculcate the love of truth for its own sake. The student should be taught to be absolutely fair, not to choose this revelation of a document and ignore that, because the one harmonizes with his prejudices and the other does not. Absolute impartiality, an almost impersonal, at any rate a highly judicial, quality of mind, should be shown by the teacher and demanded of the student. Here is perhaps the greatest difficulty in connection with our study; but for that reason a great advantage, the difficulty once overcome. By temperament, taste, and training we tend instinctively to take sides for or against this or that person, or this or that idea, in dispute. As Professor Prothero has pointed out: "The human element in the subject calls out the human element in the student. Not only is the investigation obscured, but the sympathies of the investigator are aroused and his judgment is liable to be warped at every turn. History alone suffers from this doubly distorting medium. Other sciences are free from its effects. It is comparatively easy to be impartial about the theory of light or the behavior of a comet, but few of us can discuss Edward the First or Mary Stuart and keep our heads quite cool."

Thus the student should learn to be temperate and cautious in his judgments. He should also

learn that historical truths are not like those of the exact sciences, but that they are a weighing of evidence and, to some extent, of probabilities, and therefore evoke the same intellectual processes as the problems of every-day life. He becomes aware that the great object of life is, as Arnold said, "to see it steadily and see it whole." He must be taught over and over again that his salvation lies in thinking straight and clearly, that there must be no distortion of the facts, no suppression of evidence in the interest of preconceptions or prejudices. "I would not accuse either gentleman of being consciously unsportsmanlike," writes Andrew Lang of two English historians who treated of the same period but with remarkably different results; "nevertheless each omits exactly the points on which the other lays stress."

History should be taught and studied for its own sake, regardless of consequences, solely with a view to know the truth. If this ideal can be left with the student in a study in which, by the very reason of the personal equation, it is most difficult to be judicial and objective, much will have been accomplished; for, according to John Locke, "to love truth for truth's sake, is the principal part of human perfection in this world, and the seed plot of all other virtues."

## § 5. Cautions and Limitations.

The use of sources should be attended by no illusions. As a matter of safe practice, only those which have a well-accredited value should be put into the hands of the student; yet an impression should never be given that, because a thing is original, it is sacrosanct. Because a document is authentic it does not follow that it is accurate or that it is important. While we may dissent from Lord Bacon's statement that "Time is like a river that brings down upon its bosom only the lighter products of the mind," we should not, on the other hand, instinctively attach weight to a document because it is venerable. This or that individual piece in the hands of a class may be full of the weaknesses or idiosyncrasies of men—false, trivial, one-sided, prejudiced, ill-informed. It may for these very qualities have a distinct and high value, but its value will not lie in the literal truthfulness of its statements. Skepticism, not belief, should be the attitude of mind that the use of sources should arouse. Have we the document as the author wrote it? if so, was he well informed? and if both these, was he well intentioned? are questions that should constantly be put. The similarity between the original material which is poured out every day in the press and in the legislature and from the

platform, and the material which we put before our classes, should be made perfectly apparent to them; then all the mystery of this most formidable process of original research at once drops away, and its true value and great charm appear.

A boy goes to a political meeting, and is not absolutely overwhelmed by the personality of the orator—is conscious, however dimly, of the partisanship, the one-sidedness, the personal animus, and is mildly skeptical. Or, if he is not, then the repeated disclosure of these characteristics in the orators of the past should make him more temperate in his judgments of the present, more restless under the authority of persons or parties. The two feelings interact, each now a cause, now an effect. The truth remains that the boy likes the concrete and original, and that this is the characteristic to be exploited. He likes to know what his hero actually said, just as he prefers the actual mineral or stamp to any known description of it.

We believe that the study of history is greatly deepened and enriched by a judicious use of original material; that a greater sense of the reality of the past and a wider use of the mind result; that from the greater robustness and individuality of the study a deeper and more permanent interest in it is most likely to ensue. We believe that the opposition to its use as supplementary to other work of the school



course is based upon a misunderstanding of what the sources are. We do not have far to go to find an analogy: in teaching current-topic classes, the skilful teacher uses sources only. For lack of time and material it is not possible to use the same method in all history teaching; but, wherever possible, we should use the same methods in studying the history of the past as in studying that which is now a-making.

Does not this direct contact of the student with the records that contain the story tend to develop, more than anything else can do, "the truly historic mind—which is the mind of profound sympathy with the great deeds and passionate hopes of Man in the Past?"<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> An exhaustive *Bibliography of the Study and Teaching of History*, of the very greatest value to teachers, has been compiled by James Ingersoll Wyer and published in the *Annual Report* of the American Historical Association for the year 1899 (Washington, Government Printing Office, 1900.) Over six hundred titles are grouped under the following heads: Philosophy of History, Methodology of History, Educational Value of History, Place in Curriculum, Method of Study and Teaching.

For those not having access to this invaluable list the following books are suggested:

Langlois and Seignobos. *Introduction to the Study of History*. (New York. Henry Holt. 1898.)

Burke Aaron Hinsdale. *How to Study and Teach History with Particular Reference to the History of the United States*. (New York. D. Appleton & Co. 1894.)

Robert Flint. *History of the Philosophy of History*. (New York. Charles Scribner's Sons. 1894.)

## 18            Usefulness of Sources

New books on the teaching of history are announced by Professor Henry E. Bourne (Longmans, Green & Co.) and Professor Lucy Maynard Salmon (Macmillan Co., New York.)

An interesting account of modern German historical writing is given in Antoine Guillard's *L'Allemagne nouvelle et ses historiens*. (Paris. Alcan. 1900.) The author discusses in detail the professional careers and characteristics of Niebuhr, Ranke, Mommsen, Sybel and Treitschke. An excellent bibliography is appended.

## Part II.

### Ancient History.

#### § 6. Selection and Bibliography.

THE sources of Ancient History which are available in English are surprisingly numerous, but there is a great difference in the interest and usefulness of them. They range from mere collections of mythological tales, such as the *History* of Dionysius of Halicarnassus, to the vivid, interesting account of the Greeks and barbarians by Herodotus.

There are no bibliographies of the subject, and few collections. Some of the secondary works have notes as to the critical value of the sources; of these, the most elaborate are in the *History of Greece*, by Adolph Holm. Mr. Holm adds a critical note to each chapter, in which he discusses not only the original sources, but the histories and comments of later ages. Unfortunately these notes are not indexed, and many of the ancient writers cover such wide fields that it often requires a patient search to find Mr. Holm's estimate of a given writer. Botsford's *Histories of Greece and Rome* and Wolf-

son's *Essentials of Ancient History* have lists of the sources at the end of each chapter, which are very useful because of the exact references ; but there is no comment. In Mommsen's *History of Rome* and Grote's *History of Greece* there are occasional foot-notes which discuss the text, with references to the sources. These are too technical and detailed to be of value to the secondary school.

If only three or four of the sources may be put into a school library, it is not difficult to see that Homer, Herodotus, Thucydides, and Plutarch should be those chosen, for in interest and value they cannot be surpassed. Three of the four are Greek sources, and Plutarch was the biographer of both Greeks and Romans ; but this preponderance of the Greek element is not surprising when one remembers that the literary life of the Romans was consciously based upon that of the Greeks, and that the imitator falls short of the high ideal before him.

If a school may have ten of the sources, it would be well to add Tacitus, Polybius, Æschylus, Aristotle's *Athenian Constitution*, the *Meditations* of Marcus Aurelius, and Pliny's *Letters*. In a classical course, Cæsar, Cicero, and Xenophon are read in the original ; and the knowledge gained in the Latin or the Greek class may be used in the history class.

### § 7. Collections of Sources in Ancient History.

As yet very few collections for use in schools have been made for this field, though several are in progress. Those already in use are :

FRED MORROW FLING, *Studies in European History*, Vol. I: *Greek and Roman Civilization, with an introduction to the source study method*. (Chicago, Ainsworth & Co., 1900.)—This collection, made by a professor in the University of Nebraska, contains selections from some of the principal sources, such as Xenophon, Aristotle, and Polybius. The selections are interesting and well chosen ; but the book has the fault of any small source-book covering such a large period, in that the episodes chosen for illustration are necessarily few and without connection. It contains very good selections from Pliny's letters to the Emperor Trajan, and interesting accounts of Alexander's conquests from Arrian.

G. H. JENNINGS and W. S. JOHNSTONE, *Half-Hours with Greek and Latin Authors ; from various English translations, with biographical notices*. (New York, Appleton, 1882.)—A collection of extracts from Greek and Roman literature, which seem to be judicious selections, both comprehensive in scope and useful as illustrations.

MARY D. SHELDON, *Studies in General History*. (Boston, Heath, 1886.)—Contains short extracts from

the more valuable sources, such as Herodotus, and Plutarch. The extracts are too short and disconnected to be of much use ; but some of them, such as the fragments of the laws of the Twelve Tables, are interesting and difficult to find elsewhere.

In addition to these collections, Miss Anna B. Thompson is preparing a source-book of Greek History, to be published by the Macmillan Company ; the extracts are to be arranged by epochs and accompanied by critical notes. D. C. Heath & Co. have planned a revision of Barnes's *General History*, which is to be supplemented by source-books ; that on Greek History is to be made by Professor F. M. Fling of the University of Nebraska, and that on Roman History by Professor Dana C. Munro of the University of Pennsylvania.

There are two series of translations of the classics, which are easily obtained and reasonable in price : the *Handy Literal Translations*, 88 vols., published by Hinds and Noble, New York, at the uniform price of fifty cents a volume ; and the translations in the Bohn Library, some of which are published by Macmillan and some by the American Book Company, at about one dollar a volume. The books in both of these series have all the objections of literal translations, though they vary greatly in individual merit.

## § List of Available Sources in Ancient History.

This list is arranged alphabetically by writers, and includes only works which are available in English translation. Only those translations and editions have been mentioned which are of moderate price, such as might be purchased for a school library. Brief accounts of most of these authors, and criticisms on their writings will be found in the periods below (§§ 10-28).

### AESCHYLUS.

E. H. Plumptre, translator, *The Tragedies of Aeschylus* (verse). (New York, Routledge, 1868.)

Lewis Campbell, translator, *The Seven Plays in English Verse*. (London, Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co., 1890.)

### AMMIANUS MARCELLINUS.

C. D. Yonge, translator, *Roman History during the reign of Constantius, Julian, Jovianus, Valentinian and Valens*. (Bohn Library. New York, Macmillan.)

### APPIAN.

Horace White, translator, *The Roman History of Appian of Alexandria*. (2 vols. New York, Macmillan, 1899.)

### ARISTOPHANES.

John Hookham Frere, translator, *Select Plays of Aristophanes*. (New York, Routledge, 1886.)

William James Hickie, translator, *The Comedies of Aristophanes*. 2 vols. (Bohn's Classical Library. London, Bell & Sons, 1871-1881; also earlier editions.)

ARISTOTLE.

F. G. Kenyon, translator, *Aristotle on the Athenian Constitution, with introduction and notes*. (London, Bell & Sons, 1891.)

ARRIAN.

Edward James Chinnock, translator, *Arrian's Anabasis of Alexander and Indica*, with a copious commentary. (Bohn's Classical Library. London, Bell & Sons, 1893); also an earlier edition (London, Hodder & Stoughton, 1884).

AUGUSTINE.

Marcus Dods, editor, *The Works of Aurelius Augustine, Bishop of Hippo*. Vols. I-II: *The City of God*. (8 vols. Edinburgh, T. & T. Clark, 1871-1872.)

AUGUSTUS.

William Fairley, editor, *Monumentum Ancyranum: the Deeds of Augustus*. (Philadelphia, Department of History of the University of Pennsylvania, 1898.)

CÆSAR.

W. A. McDevitte and W. S. Bohn, translators, *Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic and Civil Wars; with the Supplementary Books attributed to Histius, including the Alexandrian, African and Spanish Wars; with notes*. (Bohn's Classical Library. New York, American Book Company, 1898.)

*Handy Literal Translation of Cæsar's Gallic and Civil Wars*. (New York, Hinds & Noble.)



## CICERO.

G. E. Jeans, translator, *The Life and Letters of Marcus Tullius Cicero; being a new Translation of the Letters included in Mr. Watson's Selection, with historical and critical notes.* (London, Macmillan, 1880.)

Evelyn S. Shuckburgh, translator, *The Letters of Cicero; the whole extant correspondence in chronological order.* (4 vols. Bohn's Classical Library. London, Bell & Sons, 1899-1900.)

C. D. Yonge, translator, *Select Orations of Cicero.* (4 vols. Bohn's Classical Library. New York, American Book Company.)

*Handy's Literal Translation of Cicero's Works.* (9 vols. New York, Hinds & Noble.)

## DEMOSTHENES.

Charles Rann Kennedy, translator, *The Orations of Demosthenes; with notes and appendices.* (5 vols. Bohn's Classical Library. London, Bell & Sons, 1881-87.)

Charles Rann Kennedy, translator, *The Olynthiac, and other Public Orations of Demosthenes; with notes, etc.* (Harper's Classical Library. New York, Harper, 1862.)

Charles Rann Kennedy, translator, *The Orations of Demosthenes on the Crown and on the Embassy; with notes, etc.* (Harper's Classical Library. New York, Harper, 1886.)—This is Vol. II. of the preceding work.

## EPICTETUS.

Elizabeth Carter, translator, *Moral Discourses.* (2 vols. Temple Classics. New York, Macmillan, 1899.)—Edited by W. H. D. Rouse.

George Long, translator, *A Selection from the Discourses of Epictetus, with the Encheiridion*. (New York, Putnam, 1895.)

#### EURIPIDES.

Edward P. Coleridge, translator, *The Plays of Euripides, translated into English prose, from the text of Paley*. (2 vols. (also single dramas are published separately). Bohn's Classical Library. London, Bell & Sons, 1891.)

William Cranston Lawton, translator, *Three Dramas of Euripides*. (Boston, Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1889.)

#### HERODOTUS.

Henry Cary, translator, *Herodotus: a new and literal version from the text of Baehr with a geographical and general index*. (Bohn's Classical Library. New York, American Book Company, 1897.)

G. C. Macaulay, translator, *History of Herodotus; with notes*. (2 vols. London, Macmillan, 1890.)

George Rawlinson, translator, *History of Herodotus; with notes* (4 vols. New York, Scribner); also another edition, with text the same as above and abridged notes (2 vols. New York, Scribner).

John S. White, editor, *The Boys' and Girls' Herodotus; being parts of the "History" of Herodotus, edited for boys and girls, with an introduction*. (New York, Putnam, 1894.)

#### HESIOD.

George Chapman, translator, *Hesiod's Works and Days*—in *Homer's Batrachomyomachia*, edited by Richard Hooper. (London, J. R. Smith, 1858.)

James Davies, translator, *The Works of Hesiod, Callimachus and Theognis, literally translated into English prose, with copious notes by the Rev. J. Banks* [now Davies]. *To which are appended the metrical translations of* [Hesiod by] *Elton, [Callimachus by] Tytler, and [Theognis by] Frere.* (Bohn's Classical Library. London, Bell & Sons, 1892.)

Charles Abraham Elton, translator, *The Remains of Hesiod the Ascraean, including The Shield of Hercules, translated into English rhyme and blank-verse, with a Dissertation on the Life and Era, the Poems and Mythology of Hesiod.* (2d edition. London, Baldwin, Cradock & Joy, 1815.)

#### HOMER.

William Cullen Bryant, translator, *The Iliad of Homer.* (2 vols. Boston, Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1870.)—Blank verse.

Andrew Lang, Walter Leaf, and Ernest Myers, translators, *The Iliad of Homer.* (London, Macmillan, 1883.)—Prose.

William Cullen Bryant, translator, *The Odyssey of Homer.* (2 vols. Boston, Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1871-1872.)—Blank verse.

Samuel Henry Butcher and Andrew Lang, translators, *The Odyssey of Homer.* (New York, Macmillan, 1900.)—Prose.

George Herbert Palmer, translator, *The Odyssey of Homer.* (Boston, Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1891.)—Metrical prose.

## HORACE.

Sir Theodore Martin, translator, *The Works of Horace, translated into English verse, with a life and notes.* (2 vols. Edinburgh, Blackwood, 1881.)

Christopher Smart, translator, *The Works of Horace, translated literally into English prose; a new edition revised with a copious selection of notes.* (Harper's Classical Library.) New York, Harper, 1891.—Edited by Theodore Alois Buckley.

## ISOCRATES.

J. H. Freese, translator, *The Oration of Isocrates; with introduction and notes.* (2 vols. Bohn's Classical Library. London, Bell & Sons, 1894.)

## JOSEPHUS.

William Whiston, translator, *The Works of Flavius Josephus* [containing *The Antiquities of the Jews and the Jewish war*]. (2 vols. London, Baynes, 1825); (4 vols., New York, Oakley, Mason & Co., 1869); also revised by A. R. Shilleto. (5 vols. Bohn's Standard Library. London, Bell & Sons, 1889–1890.)

## JUSTIN.

John Selby Watson, translator, *Justin, Cornelius Nepos, and Eutropius; literally translated, with notes and a general index.* (Bohn's Classical Library. London, Henry G. Bohn, 1853.)

## JUVENAL.

*Handy Literal Translation of Juvenal's Satires.* (New York, Hinds & Noble.)

## LIVY.

D. Spillan, translator, *The History of Rome by Titus Livius*. (New York, Harper, 1890.)

*Handy Literal Translation of Livy*. Books I-II, XXI-XXII. (New York, Hinds & Noble.)

## LUCIAN.

Emily J. Smith, translator, *Selections from Lucian*. (New York, Harper, 1892.)

*Handy Literal Translation of Select Dialogues of Lucian*. (2 vols. New York, Hinds & Noble.)

## LYSIAS.

*Handy Literal Translation of the Orations of Lysias*. (New York, Hinds & Noble.)

## MARCUS AURELIUS.

George Long, translator, *The Thoughts of the Emperor Marcus Aurelius Antoninus*. (New York, Putnam.)

## PAUSANIAS.

J. G. Frazer, translator, *Pausanias's Description of Greece; with a commentary*. (6 vols. New York, Macmillan, 1898.)—Extensive notes and photogravures.

A. R. Shilleto, translator, *Pausanias's Description of Greece; with notes and index*. (2 vols. Bohn's Classical Library. London, Bell & Sons, 1886.)

Margaret de G. Verrall, translator, *Mythology and Monuments of Ancient Athens: being a translation of a portion of the "Attica" of Pausanias; with introductory essay and archæological commentary by Jane E. Harrison*. (New York, Macmillan, 1894.)—Full commentary and illustrations.

## PINDAR.

Ernest Myers, translator, *The Extant Odes of Pindar; with an introduction and short notes.* (New York, Macmillan, 1874.)

## PLATO.

Benjamin Jowett, translator, *The Dialogues of Plato; with analyses and introductions.* (2d edition. 5 vols. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1875.)—Earlier edition (4 vols., New York, Scribner, 1871, 1872, 1873); also (6 vols. Bohn's Classical Library. London, Bell & Sons).

## PLINY (the Elder).

John Bostock and H. T. Riley, translators, *The Natural History of Pliny; with copious notes and illustrations.* (6 vols. Bohn's Classical Library. London, 1855-1857.)

John S. White, editor, *The Boys' and Girls' Pliny; being parts of Pliny's "Natural History," edited for boys and girls, with an introduction.* (New York, Putnam, 1885.)

## PLINY (the Younger).

A. J. Church and H. J. Brodribb, translators, *The Letters of the Younger Pliny.* (Ancient Classics.) (Philadelphia, Lippincott, and Edinburgh, Blackwood, 1872.)

F. C. T. Bosanquet, editor, *The Letters of Pliny, the Younger; Melmoth's translation, revised with additional notes, a short life, and index.* (Bohn's Classical Library. New York, Macmillan, 1888.)

J. D. Lewis, translator, *The Letters of the Younger Pliny.* (Trübner, London.)

## PLUTARCH.

A. H. Clough, editor, *Plutarch's Lives of Illustrious Men; corrected from the Greek and revised*. (Dryden's translation.) (1 vol. Boston, Little, Brown & Co., 1881.)

Bernadotte Perrin, translator, *Plutarch's Themistocles and Aristides*. (New York, Scribner, 1901.)—A new translation of the lives of Themistocles and Aristides, with historical notes and an introduction which sets forth Plutarch's method in writing the "Lives" and the nature of his material.

A. Stewart and George Long, translators, *Plutarch's Lives of Famous Greeks and Romans*. 4 vols. (Bohn's Standard Library. New York, Macmillan, 1889.)

John S. White, editor, *The Boys' and Girls' Plutarch: being parts of the "Lives" of Plutarch, edited for boys and girls, with an introduction*. (New York, Putnam, 1899.)

## POLYBIUS.

James Hampton, translator, *The General History of Polybius*. (5th edition, 2 vols. Oxford, printed for Parker and Whittaker, 1823.)

Evelyn S. Shuckburgh, translator, *The Histories of Polybius, from the text of F. Hultsch*. (2 vols. London and New York, Macmillan, 1889.)

## SALLUST.

A. W. Pollard, translator, *Sallust's Conspiracy of Catiline and the Jugurthine War*. (New York, Macmillan, 1882.)

J. S. Watson, translator, *Sallust, Florus, and Vellius Paterculus, literally translated, with copious notes and a general index.* (Bohn's Classical Library. New York, Harper, 1896.)

SOPHOCLES.

Lewis Campbell, translator, *The Seven Plays of Sophocles* (verse). (New York, Routledge, 1888.)

Edward P. Coleridge, translator, *The Tragedies of Sophocles, translated into English prose from the text of Jebb.* (Bohn's Classical Library. London, Macmillan, 1893.)—Also single dramas, 7 vols.

E. H. Plumptre, translator, *The Tragedies of Sophocles* (verse). (New York, Routledge, 1871.)

SUETONIUS.

Alexander Thomson, translator, *The Lives of the Twelve Cæsars by C. Suetonius Tranquillus, to which are added the Lives of the Grammarians, Rhetoricians, and Poets; revised, with notes and index, by T. Forester.* (Bohn's Classical Library. New York, Macmillan.)

TACITUS.

A. J. Church and W. J. Brodribb, translators, *The Agricola and Germania of Tacitus; with a revised text, English notes, and maps.* New Edition. (London, Macmillan, 1876.)

A. J. Church and W. J. Brodribb, translators, *The Annals and History of Tacitus.* (New York, Macmillan.)

*The Works of Tacitus: the Oxford Translation revised, with notes.* (2 vols. New York, Harper, 1875.)



## THUCYDIDES.

Henry Dale, translator, *The History of the Peloponnesian War: a new and literal version from the text of Arnold collated with Bekker, Götter, and Poppo*. (New York, American Book Company, 1898.)—Very poor English.

Benjamin Jowett, translator, *Thucydides, translated into English, with introduction, marginal analysis, notes and indices*. (2 vols. Clarendon Press Series. New York, Henry Frowde.)—Also 1 vol. (Boston, Lathrop, 1883, out of print at present).

## VIRGIL.

John Conington, translator, *The Aeneid of Virgil*. (New York, Widdleton, 1867.)—Verse.

John Conington, translator, *The Aeneid of Virgil*. (Boston, Willard Small.)—Prose.

James Lonesdale and Samuel Lee, translators, *The Aeneid, the Eclogues, and Georgics of Virgil* (prose). (Macmillan.)

## XENOPHON.

H. G. Dakyns, translator, *The Works of Xenophon*. (4 vols. London, Macmillan, 1890.)—In process of publication, 1902.

J. S. Watson, translator, *The Anabasis, or Expedition of Cyrus, and the Memorabilia of Socrates*. (New York, Harper, 1871.)

*Handy Literal Translation of the Works of Xenophon*. (New York, Hinds & Noble.)

### § 9. References to the Sources of Ancient History arranged by Periods.

The following references are to editions of which full titles will be found above, § 8 :

### § 10. The Epic Age of Greek History, 1000-700 B. C.

HOMER, *Iliad* and *Odyssey*. Of the many translations into both verse and prose, the best are mentioned above, § 8 : Lang, Leaf, and Myers's prose translations of the *Iliad* ; Bryant's translations of the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey* into English blank verse ; Palmer's metrical prose translation of the *Odyssey* ; Butcher and Lang's prose translation of the *Odyssey*.—These two great epic poems are the sources of our knowledge of the early Greeks. The subjects—the Siege of Troy and the Wanderings of Ulysses—are too well known to need amplification. The two groups of poems, composed probably in the tenth and ninth and eighth centuries, picture the manners and customs, the government, warfare, religion, and the character of the Hellenes in the period about 1000-700 B. C. Not only are they very valuable for their historical matter, but they are perhaps the greatest of their kind, which the world has known ; and they were venerated and admired by the Greeks themselves in all times.

The following selections are especially useful for a class. From the *Iliad* : the council-meeting of the Greek

leaders (Book II, lines 54-440); the parting between Hector and Andromache (VI, 370-503); the death of Hector (XXII, 128-515); the funeral games of Patroclus (XXIII, 184-897). From the *Odyssey*: the king's daughter Nausicaa at the river with her maidens to wash the clothes of the family (VI, 1-125); the palace of Alcinous (VII, 82-132).

HESIOD, *Remains* (Translations by Elton and Chapman).—Hesiod was a Boeotian poet who wrote about 700 B. C. In his *Works and Days* he gives us the everyday life of the poorer classes with homelier surroundings than those pictured by Homer. The *Theogony* relates the origin of the gods, and is the basis of the later mythology of the Greeks.

### § 11. The Early History of Athens (before the Persian Wars).

ARISTOTLE, *On the Athenian Constitution*. (Kenyon's translation.)—Aristotle, born in Stagira, 384 B. C., died in 322 B. C. His was one of the greatest minds the Greeks produced: hardly a branch of knowledge existed in his day which he did not master and advance. After he had finished his task of instructing Alexander the Great, he lived in Athens for some years. His treatise on the Athenian Constitution is part of a long work on the constitutional history of one hundred and fifty-eight states, most of which is lost. This monograph was recently discovered, and is accepted by most scholars as genuine. It contains a great many

new facts, particularly as to the early development of the constitution, and is very valuable. It is dry, but straightforward in style, and is of the greatest interest in constitutional matters.

PLUTARCH, *Life of Solon*. (Translations by Stewart, Clough, White, Perrin and Lang.)—Plutarch was a Greek, born in Bœotia, about 50 A. D. He travelled much, and at one time taught Greek philosophy at Rome. He was a prolific writer, and the most famous of his extant works are the biographies of famous Greeks and Romans, of which we have fifty. They cannot be relied upon for strict historical accuracy, but are in general truthful and valuable as pictures of the times and as artistic studies of character: as, for example, the description of the Roman triumph, which occurs in the "Life of Paulus Æmilius," and the character of Pericles. They are written in an interesting style and are convincing.

HERODOTUS, *History* (Translations by Cary, Macaulay, Rawlinson, and White.)—Very valuable.—Herodotus of Halicarnassus was born about 490 B. C., and wrote his *History* "in order that the actions of men might not be effaced by time, nor the great and wondrous deeds displayed both by Greeks and barbarians deprived of renown; and among the rest, for what cause they waged war upon each other" (Book I, ch. 1). His work is divided into nine books, and taken together it presents a vivid picture of the ancient world. Herodotus possessed an inquiring mind, and is thought to have travelled widely, observing and questioning. He gives not only

## Early History of Athens 37

historical events, but the manners and customs, traditions, and geographical features of the countries—in the latter respect he is in marked contrast to Thucydides. Herodotus is not a critical or an accurate historian, and contains many stories, exaggerations, and unverified reports. Beginning with the Lydians, who subdued the Greek towns of Ionia, he naturally passes to the Persians, who were the conquerors of the Lydians. In the course of his account of the Persians, he gives a description of the Babylonians, Egyptians, and Scythians. This leads to the story of the Ionian revolt and the subsequent expeditions against Greece. Wide as is the field which he covers, he is never tiresome; and he gives a most vivid picture of the foreign nations, though fewer details about the Greeks themselves.

It is difficult to make selections from Herodotus, because he is interesting from beginning to end. A few are: Croesus (Book I, chs. 50–92); Polycrates, tyrant of Samos (III, chs. 39–47, 120–135); Pisistratidæ (I, chs. 59–64, V, chs. 62–65); battle of Marathon (VI, chs. 109–120); preparations of Xerxes (VII, chs. 22–53); Xerxes crossing the Hellespont (VII, chs. 54–100); preparations of the Athenians (VII, chs. 138–145); Thermopylæ (VII, chs. 206–229); the wiles of Themistocles and the battle of Salamis (VIII, chs. 74–119); Mardonius' negotiations with Athens (VIII, chs. 133–144).

## § 12. The Early History of Sparta.

PLUTARCH, *Life of Lycurgus*.—See p. 36 above.

HERODOTUS, *History*, Book I, chs. 65–68.—See p. 36 above. Both Plutarch and Herodotus give the legendary account of Lycurgus and his laws.

## § 13. Lyric Poetry.

PINDAR, *Odes*. (Myer's Translation.)—Pindar, one of the greatest of the lyrical poets of Greece, was born near Thebes about 522 B. C. His best-known works are the *Odes*, written to celebrate the victories at the four great national games. They are valuable as showing the importance in which these games were held by all Greeks. Parts of them—those relating to the descent of the victors—are not interesting, but some orations are valuable for their force, imagination, and Hellenic spirit.

## § 14. The Græco-Persian Wars.

HERODOTUS, *History*.—See p. 36 above.

PLUTARCH, *Themistocles and Aristides*.—See p. 36 above.

ÆSCHYLUS, *The Persians*. (Plumptre's translation, verse.)—Æschylus was the first of the three great tragic poets of Athens. As a boy he knew of the expulsion of the Pisistratidæ, and of the establishment of the democracy by Cleisthenes; and as a man he rejoiced to

take part in the two Persian Wars. Of his ninety dramas only seven are extant; but these are very valuable as showing the height of grandeur which the Greek tragedy reached and as giving us an insight into the character and beliefs of the time. One of his plays, *The Persians*, is historical in subject, dealing with the return of the defeated Xerxes. Selections from "The Persians," the Dream of Xerxes' Mother, lines 178-216; Battle narrated by a Persian, lines 251-473.

### §15. The Age of Cimon.

ARISTOTLE, *The Athenian Constitution*, ch. 26 ff.—See p. 35 above.

PLUTARCH, *Life of Cimon*.—See p. 36 above.

ÆSCHYLUS, *Tragedies*.—See p. 38 above.

### §16. The Age of Pericles.

THUCYDIDES, *History of the Peloponnesian War*. Books I-II. (Translations by Jowett and Dale.)—Very valuable. The work of an Athenian who lived during the Peloponnesian War. He considered this to be the most important crisis in the history of Hellas, and from the beginning collected the materials for his work. His work is in eight books, and begins with a brief sketch of the history of Greece from the early tribal period. It is written in a direct and interesting style, free from the stories and excursions that mark Herodotus, and follows the chronological order. His work is considered accurate and remarkably free from petty prejudices,

though he overestimates the importance of the present. There are few deliberate sketches of character, but numerous speeches give fairly good impressions of the leaders on both sides. These speeches are, of course, not verbatim reports; but in the case of the most important, the funeral oration over the Athenians who died the first year of the war, by Pericles, Holm (*History of Greece*, II, 332) thinks that we may safely assume its accuracy.

Selections useful for a class are: The funeral oration by Pericles (Book II, chs. 34-46); the siege of Platæa (II, chs. 71-78, III, chs. 20-24); the naval battle at Syracuse (VII, chs. 69-71); the appeal of Corcyra and Corinth to the Athenian Assembly (I, chs. 32-44); Corinthians and Athenians before the Lacedæmonian Assembly (I, chs. 68-78); pestilence in Athens (II, chs. 47-54); the affair at Pylos (IV, chs. 5-41); arguments of Nicias and Alcibiades in regard to the Sicilian expedition (VI, chs. 8-24).

PLUTARCH, *Life of Pericles*.—See p. 36 above.

SOPHOCLES, *Tragedies*. (Coleridge's translation, prose; Campbell and Plumptre's translations, verse.)—Sophocles, like Aeschylus, is of great value for an understanding of the Greek life and thought of the fifth century B. C.

PAUSANIAS, *Description of Greece*. (Translations by Frazer, Shilleto and Verrall.)—Pausanias lived during the reign of the Antonines, and traveled throughout Greece. His work, in ten books, is a description of what he saw and heard, and contains accounts of many



## The Peloponnesian War 41

works of art which have since been destroyed. As might be expected, he gives a great deal of mythology. This does not seem to be a source of much value to secondary schools as it is dull in style and full of minute details of perished monuments.

### § 17. The Peloponnesian War.

THUCYDIDES, *Peloponnesian War*, Books II–VIII.—See p. 39 above.

ARISTOTLE, *Athenian Constitution*, ch. 28 ff.—See p. 35 above.

PLUTARCH, *Lives of Alcibiades and Nicias*.—See p. 36 above.

ARISTOPHANES, *Comedies*. (Translations by Frere and Hickie.)—The *Comedies* of Aristophanes are of value as reflecting the opinions of the opposition party in Athens during the period of the Peloponnesian War. Their purpose was to ridicule and caricature contemporary men and events. As Holm (*History of Greece*, II, 449) says, they took the place of a modern comic paper; consequently they cannot be trusted as truthful pictures of what they represent. They are good for the study of social and private life rather than for that of individuals. In "The Knights," Nicias, Demosthenes and Cleon are the characters, and the affair at Pylos is the subject of ridicule. "The Birds" is an extravaganza in which Aristophanes probably intended to ridicule the ambition of the Athenians. It was first presented during the Sicilian expedition. In "The Clouds," Aris-

tophanes ridicules the Sophists who proposed to train the youth of Athens in the arts of public speaking and successful litigation. Socrates is one of the characters.

EURIPIDES, *Tragedies*. (Translations by Coleridge and Lawton.)—These tragedies, like those of Aeschylus, are of great value for an understanding of the Greek life and thought of the fifth century B.C.

### § 18. The Tyranny at Syracuse.

PLUTARCH, *Life of Timoleon*.—See p. 36 above.

### § 19. Spartan Supremacy, 404–371 B.C.

XENOPHON, *The Anabasis, or Retreat of the Ten Thousand*; *Memorabilia of Socrates*; *Hellenica*. (Translations by Dakyns, Watson, and in the Handy Literal Series.—Xenophon was an Athenian, born about 434 B.C. He was opposed to the democracy, and favored the Spartan power; hence he is accused of being prejudiced in his historical writings, though Holm (*History of Greece*, II, ch. XXVIII, notes) declares that he finds no trace of bias against the democracy. He accompanied the expedition of Cyrus against his brother Darius, king of Persia; and upon the death of Cyrus, in the battle of Cunaxa, led the Greeks back to the Greek settlements on the Euxine. The *Anabasis* is an account of the expedition. Xenophon was a pupil and admirer of Socrates, and wrote his *Memorabilia* with the purpose of refuting the charges on which the

## The Peloponnesian War 43

famous philosopher was condemned to drink the fatal hemlock. It is valuable as showing the familiar side of the theories and the character of Socrates, and describes him as guilty of no impiety, but concerned with the study of virtue, which he not only strove to teach to his own pupils but led them to practice. The *Hellenica* is the history of Greece during the period of Spartan supremacy and the contest with Thebes. It is not so great a work as that of Thucydides, for it lacks the comprehensiveness and impartiality which characterizes the historian of the Peloponnesian War. The *Anabasis*: Battle of Cunaxa and character of Cyrus (Book I, chs. 8-9); sufferings of the Greeks (IV, ch. 5); the Greeks in sight of the sea (IV, ch. 7); *Memorabilia*. Defense of Socrates (I, chs. 1-2); death of Socrates (IV, ch. 8).

ARISTOTLE, *Athenian Constitution*, chs. 34-41.—See p. 35 above.

PLUTARCH, *Lives of Lysander and Agesilaus*.—See p. 36 above.

LYSIAS, *Orations*. (Handy Literal Translation.)—Lysias was one of the most eminent orators in Athens during the period of the Spartan supremacy. He was a contemporary of Isocrates. Although a lawyer, Lysias did not practice law in the modern sense, but prepared pleas for others to deliver; these form the *Orations* which have come down to us. He was one of the first to use the simple, every-day language in his speeches, which are excellent illustrations of phases of Athenian life in his time.

ISOCRATES, *Orations*. (Freese's translation.)—These are, in reality, essays rather than orations, and deal with the public questions of the day. We get from Isocrates, for instance, the attitude of an intelligent Athenian of the fourth century B. C. toward the Athenian Empire, the alliance of the Greeks against Persia, etc.

PLATO, *Dialogues*. (There are many translations, but the best is by Jowett.)—With the possible exception of Aristotle, Plato was the greatest thinker and writer of Greece, but he is too profound to be of much value to pupils of the secondary schools, though of great value to teachers. Plato was the pupil of Socrates and his famous *Dialogues* are philosophical discussions in which Socrates takes part, though in reality they express the views of Plato and embody his theory of ideas. *The Republic* is valuable, for it describes an ideal government as it appeared to him; and parts of this work are interesting and comprehensible to pupils. The organization of an ideal state and the best training of its members, *The Republic* (Books II–IV); development of government from aristocracy to tyranny (Book VIII).

## §20. Theban Supremacy, 371–362 B. C.

XENOPHON, *Hellenica*, Books VI–VII.—See p. 42 above.

PLUTARCH, *Life of Pelopidas*.—See p. 36 above.

## §21. Macedonian Supremacy.

DEMOSTHENES, *Orations*. (Kennedy's translations.) —Demosthenes, the most famous Greek orator, and one of the greatest the world has produced, lived 384–322 B. C. He was one of the prominent leaders of Athens during the period in which Philip of Macedon was conquering Greece, and he realized from the first the danger to Greek liberty. His aim—to rouse his countrymen to emulate the deeds of their fathers against Persia—found expression in a series of orations called *Philippics* and *Olynthiacs*, the latter so-called because they urged alliance with Olynthus against Philip. The most famous of all Demosthenes' orations—that on the "Crown"—is virtually a justification of the whole public policy and life of Demosthenes, though nominally a defence of one who proposed to give a crown to him and was accused by Aeschines, leader of the party for Philip, of breaking the law. These orations are valuable as showing the political conditions of the times, as giving a vivid picture of the political parties and passions, and as furnishing the most brilliant examples of Greek oratory.

PLUTARCH, *Life of Demosthenes*.—See p. 36 above.

## §22. Alexander the Great.

ARRIAN, *Anabasis of Alexander, and Indica*. (Chinock's translation.)—Arrian was born near the end of the first century of the Christian era, at Nicomedia, in Bithynia. He became a Roman citizen and lived in Rome during a part of his career. His account of Alex-

ander's campaigns is accurate and valuable, for he had access to histories written by two of Alexander's officers, and to letters of Alexander himself. It is written in a clear, straightforward style, and is similar in form to Xenophon's *Anabasis of Cyrus*. Alexander crosses the Hellespont and visits Troy (Book I, ch. 11-12); siege of Tyre (II, chs. 18-24); Alexander at the temple of Jupiter Ammon (III, chs. 3-4); battle of Arbela (III, chs. 13-14); the meeting and Alexander's speech to the officers (V, chs. 25-26); the Macedonians offended at Alexander and his speech to them (VII, chs. 8-11); exploration of the Indus and the sufferings in the desert of Gadrosia (VI, chs. 18-25); death and character of Alexander (VII, chs. 25-30).

PLUTARCH, *Life of Alexander*.—See p. 36 above.

LUCIAN, *Dialogues*. (Translations by E. J. Smith and in the Handy Literal Series.)—Lucian was a Greek, a native of Samosata, and wrote in the time of Antonines. He was a brilliant writer who depicted with a clever satire the human weaknesses of the Greek gods and heroes. His works are a brilliant product of the later Greek thought and philosophy. They are, however, somewhat beyond the understanding of the schoolroom, but will be interesting and valuable to the teacher, who is also a student of Greek history.

### § 23. Early Roman History.

For the early part of Roman history—that is, down to the beginning of the Punic Wars, covering the periods of the monarchy, the early republic, and the conquest of

Italy—there is only the general history of Livy (of which Livy is by far more valuable) and some of Plutarch's "Lives."

LIVY, *History of Rome*. (Spillan's translation.)—Livy, one of the greatest Roman historians, lived during the early days of the Empire. His *History* consisted of one hundred and forty-two books, of which to-day we have only thirty-five. These carry the *History* from the beginning of Rome down to 293 B.C., and include also the second Punic War. Thus the books which we have he did not write as a contemporary, and he did not make a critical use of his sources. Books I–X reach to 293 B.C., Books XXI–XLV from the beginning of the First Punic War to the end of the Third Macedonian War. For the Second Punic War he follows chiefly Fabius Pictor, a contemporary writer, and for the remainder he reproduces Polybius almost verbally; here, accordingly, he fills gaps in the parts missing from Polybius. His aim seems to have been to write a history which would be popular and flattering to the Romans themselves. He succeeded in producing a most interesting narrative, but not an accurate history. He admits that in dealing with the legendary he has no trustworthy foundation. His work is valuable for its literary excellence, and as an example of the way in which the Romans regarded their own history. A few selections are: condition of the oppressed debtors (Book II, ch. 23); first secession (II, ch. 32); Cincinnatus (III, chs. 26–27); Hannibal (XXI, ch. 4); passage of the Alps (XXI, chs. 32–37); siege of Veii

(V, chs. 7-22); battle of Cannæ (XXII, chs. 46-50); contest of Fabius and Scipio for the province of Africa (XXVIII, chs. 40-45); Hannibal's march to Rome (XXVI, chs. 7-13).

PLUTARCH, *Lives of Coriolanus, Camillus, and Pyrrhus*.—See p. 36 above.

## §24. The Conquest of the Mediterranean.

LIVY, *History of Rome*.—See p. 47 above.

POLYBIUS, *History of Rome*. (Translations by Shuckburgh and Hampton.)—Polybius is one of the most important of the ancient historians. He was a Greek, born about 204 B. C., and was carried as a hostage to Rome during the war between Perseus of Macedonia and Rome. He lived for some time in Rome, imparting the Greek culture to some of the leading Romans. He admired the power and government of the Romans, and was employed by them in various missions. He traveled extensively, apparently studying and collecting materials for his *History*, which he divided into forty books, covering the period 220-146 B. C.; of this *History*, unfortunately, much is lost. His purpose was to trace the growth of Roman power, throughout the Mediterranean world, and including events in Greece during the Roman conquest of that peninsula; thus his work is equally important in Greek and Roman history. He is noted for his clear conception of the unity of history, his emphasis on causes and motives, his fairness, and his statesmanlike breadth. He is the best-qualified historian



of ancient times. The first Roman fleet and its success at Mylæ (Book I, ch. 20-23); causes of the Hannibalic War (III, chs. 6-17); treaties between Rome and Carthage (III, chs. 22-28); Hannibal's passage into Italy (III, chs. 42-56); a Roman camp (VI, chs. 27-42); the defense of Syracuse by Archimedes (VIII, chs. 5-8); the Macedonian phalanx (XVIII, chs. 29-33); battle of Cynoscephalæ (XVIII, chs. 20-27); Polybius' friendship with Scipio (XXXII, chs. 9-10).

APPIAN, *Roman History*, Vol. I: The Foreign Wars. (White's translation).—Appian was a Greek, born in Alexandria 90 A. D. He lived in Rome and held office as procurator under the emperors. Appian was the author of a voluminous history, much of which is still in existence. He is not accurate in the modern sense, but he is no more unreliable than Plutarch or Sallust. His *History* is a narrative of events rather than a criticism of them; it is readable and impartial, though it is dry and not as great as that of Tacitus or of Thucydides. The Romans, compelled by the Samnites to pass under the yoke (Book III, ch. 4); Scipio's triumph (VIII, ch. 9, § 66); the third Punic War (VIII, chs. 10-20); the Mithridatic Wars (XII); Pompey's defeat of the pirates (XII, ch. 14).

PLUTARCH, *Lives of Fabius, Flaminius, Cato the Elder, Aemilius Paulus*.—See p. 36 above.

JUSTIN, NEPOS, and EUTROPIUS. (Watson's translation).—Justin was an abridger of the *History* of Trogus Pompeius, which is practically a universal history covering Assyria, Persia and Macedonia. It is of little value

for it makes no distinction between fact and myth. Nepos, who wrote the lives of eminent commanders, lived in the time of Cicero. His work is of little value, for it is inaccurate; moreover, the same subjects are much better treated by Plutarch. Little is known about Eutropius beyond the fact that he lived during the reigns of Valens and Valentinian. His work is an epitome of Roman history, of little value.

### § 25. Civil Dissensions, 146–31 B. C.

SALLUST, *The Conspiracy of Catiline and the Jugurthine War*. (Translations by Pollard and Watson.)—Sallust was a Roman historian who lived 86–35 B. C. He sympathized with the *populares*, and has therefore given a favorable view of Marius and Cæsar. As a result, he is charged by Mommsen with unfairness and political motives in his writings, but he is probably as unbiased as any of the writers of the period. His work was popular with the Romans and is interesting. The Jugurthine War: Jugurtha in Rome (§§ 32–35); capture of Jugurtha by Sulla (§§ 105–113); election of Marius to his first consulship (§§ 63–73).

FLORUS, *Epitome*. (Translated by Watson, *Sallust, Florus, and Velleius Paterculus*.)—Florus lived at the beginning of the second century A. D. His work is chiefly an epitome of Roman history to the time of Augustus, based chiefly on Livy.

CÆSAR, *Commentaries on the Gallic and Civil Wars*. (McDevitte and Bohn's translation.)—The career and

position of Gaius Julius Cæsar is too well known to be commented upon. In his *Commentaries*, he gives an account of his conquest of Gaul and his struggle with Pompey which is direct, passionless, and detailed. This provides abundant material for the historian. Suetonius accuses him of suppressing facts not favorable to himself, but on the whole he is one of the most impartial of ancient historians.

CICERO, *Orations* (Yonge's translation); *Letters* (translations by Jeans and Shuckburgh).—Cicero, one of the most prominent Romans of his time—106–43 B. C.—was active in literary and political life. His orations, delivered during the critical period of Rome's history, are perhaps the most important contributions that we have to a knowledge of the times between Sulla and Augustus. Those against Catiline, and the so-called "Philippics" against Mark Antony, are perhaps the best known. The accusation against Verres is a striking picture of the corruption of a provincial governor. All his orations show an extreme partisan basis. He was a voluminous letter-writer, and apparently wrote with little reserve to his friend Atticus: these letters are a very valuable source.

APPIAN, *Roman History*, Vol. II: The Civil Wars.—See p. 49 above. The Gracchi (Book I, chs. 1–3); rivalry between Marius and Sulla (I, chs. 7–8); the war with Sertorius (I, ch. 13); the war with Spartacus (I, ch. 14); struggle between Cæsar and Pompey (II, chs. 4–13); events leading up to the second triumvirate (III).

PLUTARCH, *Lives of the Gracchi, Marius, Sulla, Sertorius, Cicero, Pompey, Crassus, Caesar, Brutus, and Antony*.—See p. 36 above.

### §26. The Augustan Age and the Early Empire.

AUGUSTUS, *Monumentum Ancyranum: the Deeds of Augustus*. (Edited by William Fairley.)—This is an epitaph of the Emperor Augustus, containing a list of his achievements, which he desired should be inscribed on brazen tablets and placed before his mausoleum. The original tablets have been destroyed; but a copy was discovered at Ancyra, Asia Minor, in 1595, and its importance is obvious.

SUETONIUS, *Lives of the Twelve Caesars*. (Thomson's translation.)—Suetonius lived in Rome about 100 A. D. He wrote the lives of the first twelve emperors, but his work is of little value in the schoolroom, for he relates personal histories, and gives the anecdotal side, rather than the political.

JOSEPHUS, *Works*. (Whiston's translation.)—Josephus was a learned Jew who lived in the last half of the first century of the Christian era. He realized the power of Rome, and was opposed to the revolt of his countrymen against Rome; nevertheless, he took part in the war and was therefore suspected by both sides. After the fall of Jerusalem he went to Rome and was received with honor. In his *Jewish War* he describes the struggle from 170 B. C. to 71 A. D.; in the *An-*

*tiquities* he gives the early history of his people from the creation. Herod and his relations with Mark Antony (Book XIV, chs. 12-15); conquest of Jerusalem by Vespasian and Titus (III-V).

VIRGIL, *Aeneid, Eclogues, and Georgics*. (Lonsdale and Lee's translation, prose; Conington's translations, verse and prose.)—Virgil was a great Roman poet of the Augustan age; he was an influential member of the literary circle around Maecenas, and a friend of Horace. His greatest work, the *Aeneid*, was modeled largely on the Homeric poems; its political significance was to magnify the preëminence of the Julian race and of Augustus himself. The *Eclogues* and the *Georgics* were written to extol the pleasures of country life; they give a good picture of the pleasanter side of rural life. Jove's promise of Rome, *Aeneid* (Book I, lines 254-296); prophecy of the greatness of Rome, *Aeneid* (Book VI, lines 752-892).

HORACE, *Works*. (Martin's translation, and Buckley's edition of Smart's translation.)—Horace, one of the world's greatest poets, lived in the golden age of Augustus, and was the friend of Maecenas. His poetry, which will always appeal to some spirits, is valuable in itself, though it will interest only a few of the pupils in a secondary school.

PATERCULUS, *History*. (Translated by Watson, *Salust, Florus, and Velleius Paterculus*.) Paterculus was a Roman historian during the reigns of Augustus and Tiberius. His work is mainly an epitome of Roman history, with most detail about Tiberius. It is valuable

for its account of the reign of that emperor, though prejudiced in his favor.

TACITUS, *Works: Agricola, Germania, Annals, and History*. (Church and Brodribb's translations, and the Oxford translation revised.) Tacitus was a Roman historian who wrote in the time of the Emperor Trajan. His writings give us an account of events from the death of Augustus; but parts of them are lost; the reign of the Flavian house of emperors is missing, and also some of the years of Caligula, Claudius, and Nero. Tacitus is very valuable because of the interest and picturesqueness of his style, but he is often prejudiced against the emperors before Nero, especially against Tiberius. One of the most important parts of his work is his account of the Germans, their political institutions and social habits; with the exception of Julius Cæsar's references to the Germans, this is the first account of them, and is of great value. His biography of Agricola is an enthusiastic account of the life of the general who subdued Britain.

A few selections from the *Annals* are: Germanicus' address to his troops (Book II, ch. 14); the great fire at Rome (XV, chs. 38-40); the Germans (III, chs. 4, 6-16).

JUVENAL, *Satires*. (Nuttall's translation.)—Juvenal was the greatest satirist in Roman literature, and his biting sarcasms give a vivid picture of life and politics in Rome during the last half of the first century.

PLINY (the Elder), *Natural History*. (Translations by Bostock and Riley, and White.)—Caius Plinius Secundus lived 23-79 A. D. He seems to have been

devoured with a curiosity to know all things, as is shown not only by the account of him in the Younger Pliny's letters, but in the variety of subjects he commented upon in his *Natural History*. He says himself that he read two thousand volumes, in addition to his own inquiry and observation, while preparing his work. Apparently it was intended to be a kind of encyclopædia of general knowledge. It shows the ignorance and credulity of the Romans on many subjects, but it is interesting as illustrative of their knowledge.

PLINY (the Younger), *Letters*. (Translations by Church and Brodribb and Lewis.)—Pliny the Younger was born in 62 A. D., and was the nephew and adopted son of the naturalist. He was a clever, educated man who held many public offices, and his letters are valuable as a picture of the events and opinions of an important epoch in history. The letters between Pliny and Trajan, when Pliny was Governor of Bithynia, contain much that is interesting, such as the attitude toward Christians.

EPICETUS, *Discourses*. (Long's translation, and Rouse's edition of Mrs. Carter's translation.)—Epicetetus was a Greek slave in Rome, about the middle of the first century A. D. He adopted the teachings of the Stoics, and although he wrote nothing himself, his discourses were preserved by Arrian, the historian of Alexander the Great. This book, with the *Meditations* of the Emperor Marcus Aurelius, are the best sources on Roman stoicism.

MARCUS AURELIUS, *Thoughts*. (Long's translation.)

—A most valuable account of the inner life of the most famous Stoic. See especially Book III, ch. 7, V, chs. 21, 24, VI, chs. 2, 21–22.

### § 27. The Later Empire.

AMMIANUS MARCELLINUS, *Roman History* (Yonge's translation).—Little is known of the life of this author, who lived in the fourth century, A. D.; and that little is derived from isolated references in the *History* itself. He was born in the city of Antioch, in Syria. He was a soldier, being enrolled among the *protectores domestici*, or body-guard of the emperor, to which none but men of noble birth were admitted. He served during the reign of Constantius in several expeditions under Ursinicus, a general of the horse. He also participated in the campaigns which Julian made against the Persians. Later he left the army and retired to Rome, where he spent his time in writing a history of the Roman Empire, covering a period of 282 years, from the accession of Nerva, 96 A. D.—where Tacitus and Suetonius left off—to the death of Valens, 378 A. D. He divided his history into thirty-one books, of which the first thirteen are lost. The portions preserved cover only the period between 353 A.D. and 378 A.D. This is, however, the most valuable part of the history, as it is a record of events that occurred during the author's lifetime.

Ammianus is a contemporary source of the highest value. Gibbon makes constant use of him, and in losing his aid after 378 A. D. says: "It is not without sincere regret that I must now take leave of an accurate and



faithful guide, who has composed the history of his own times without indulging the prejudices and passions which usually affect the mind of a contemporary."

Yonge's translation of Ammianus is provided with an excellent index, and with tables of the contents of each chapter. It contains not only an accurate record of the history of the times, but most instructive descriptions of institutions and manners.

THOMAS HODGKIN, *Italy and her Invaders*, Vols. II-VII.—Contains Ammianus Marcellinus on the Huns (II, 32-34); running quotation from Jordanes concerning the battle of Chalons (II, 125-136); passages from the letters of Sidonius Apollinaris (II, 321-373)—vivid and interesting; quotation from Paulus Diaconus on the origin of the Lombards (V, 90-97); letters from Gregory of Tours (V, chs. IX-X)—perhaps hardly appropriate for secondary students, but useful for the teacher; interesting bits may be gleaned from the Lombard laws (VI, chs. V, X); the Frankish Invasion, Gregory of Tours, and Clovis (VII, 8-9); Einhard on the Roi Fainéant (VII, 18); story of Carloman in the monastery of Monte Casino (VII, 114-117); Pippin's message to Pope Zacharias (VII, 127-128).

D. C. MUNRO and EDITH BRAMHALL, editors, *The Early Christian Persecutions* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. IV, No. 1).—Extracts, giving as nothing else could, the attitude of philosophers, church fathers, statesmen, and writers toward early Christianity. Most interesting and valuable; particularly Pliny's letter to Trajan and Trajan's

reply, Tacitus's account of the persecution under Nero, and the "Martyrdom of Cyprian."

EDWIN KNOX MITCHELL, editor, *The Canons of the First Four General Councils* (University of Pennsylvania *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. IV, No. 2).—Important as showing the growth of the early creeds and doctrines. Probably too theological and special for young students.

AUGUSTINE, *The City of God*. (Marcus Dods's translation.)—St. Augustine, one of the most famous of the early fathers of the church, lived in the fifth century A. D. He was the bishop of Hippo during the wanderings of the Visigoths and Vandals. His book, *The City of God*, was written to turn people's minds from the fall of Rome to the eternal glories of Heaven. It is interesting chiefly as the first elaborate attempt at a philosophy of history.

### § 28. The Early Germans.

TACITUS, *Germania*.—See p. 54 above. Description of the Germans (ch. 4); armor and manner of fighting (ch. 6); government (chs. 7, 11, 12, 13); their respect for women (ch. 8).

CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book VI, chs. 21–24.—See p. 50 above.

ARTHUR C. HOWLAND, editor, *The Early Germans* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. VI, No. 3).—An excellent selection of extracts from Cæsar, Tacitus, Josephus, and Ammianus Marcel-

linus, containing vivid descriptions of the customs, habits and actions of the early Germans, available for schools or for colleges.

F. M. FLING, editor, *The Teutonic Barbarians* (University of Nebraska, *Studies in European History*, Vol. II, No. 2).

THOMAS HODGKIN, *Italy and her Invaders*, Vol. I.—Contains many extracts from sources not otherwise accessible in English, of which the following are some of the more interesting: Jordanes's account of the primeval home of the Goths (pp. 33-34); Jordanes on the migration of the Goths to the Euxine (pp. 40-42); contemporary information concerning the life of Ulfilas (pp. 82-83); the Gothic alphabet compared with the Greek and English versions of the Lord's Prayer, and the parable of the Good Shepherd in Gothic (p. 102 ff., note C to ch. I); Jordanes on the Gothic traditions regarding the origin of the Huns (pp. 243-245); Themistius on the *Fœderati*, showing the policy of Theodosius toward the Goths (pp. 315-320); extracts from Zosimus showing jealousy between the Roman troops and the barbarian auxiliaries (pp. 328-330), and the strife between the representatives of the national and Romanizing parties (pp. 331-332).

## Part III.

### Mediæval and Modern European History.

#### § 29. Selection and Bibliography.

THE sources of Mediæval and Modern European History which are available in English are neither numerous nor continuous. Sources are not lacking to illuminate this field ; but they are mostly in Latin, French, or German, and have never been translated. The few collections in English are, however, valuable. Much contemporary material lies embedded in biographies and histories of special periods, and the more available of these are mentioned below. There is also a large body of original material in the form of memoirs, especially in the field of French history, many of which have been put into English. Only a few of the best-known are included in this list.

Teachers will be much aided by the bibliographies, as well as by the topical suggestions, to be found in Dana C. Munro's *Syllabus of Mediæval History*, 395-1300 A. D. (University of Pennsylvania, 1899),

## Selection and Bibliography 61

and in H. Morse Stephens's *Syllabus of a Course of Eighty-seven Lectures on Modern European History, 1600-1890* (New York, Macmillan, 1899). A useful syllabus on Nineteenth Century History is that by Levermore and Dewey, *Political History since 1815, excluding the United States* (Boston, W. J. Scofield, printer, 105 Summer St., 1889). J. H. Rose's *Revolutionary and Napoleonic Era, 1789-1815* (New York, Macmillan, 1894), contains in Appendix I a list of the most accessible and trustworthy books dealing with this period, designating those foreign works which have been translated into English. Bibliographical information may also be found in George Burton Adams's *European History* (New York, Macmillan, 1899); in Edmund Hamilton Sears's *Outline of Political Growth in the Nineteenth Century* (New York, Macmillan, 1900); in André Lebon's *Modern France* (New York, Putmans, 1898) Chs. 7, 10, and 16; and in E. F. Henderson's *Short History, of Germany* 2 vols. (New York, Macmillan, 1902) Introductory notes to each chapter.

If only four or five of the sources may be put into a school library, the following should be chosen: the University of Pennsylvania's *Translations and Reprints* (complete set), Henderson's *Historical Documents of the Middle Ages*, Froissart's *Chronicles*, Robinson's *Petrarch*, and Luther's *Table-Talk*.

The first collection is of the greatest value by reason of its range, covering, though in a fragmentary way, the history of Europe from the times of the Roman Empire down well into the nineteenth century.

If a school may have ten volumes, it would be well to add the *Chronicles of the Crusades*, Froude's *Erasmus*, Young's *Travels in France*, Napoleon's *Table-Talk*, Whitman's *Conversations with Bismarck*.

### §30. Collections of Sources in Mediæval and Modern History.

There are a few collections of historical material available for the student of European history, and they are of high value :

ERNEST F. HENDERSON, editor, *Select Historical Documents of the Middle Ages*. (New York, Macmillan, 1892.)—A valuable collection of historical material, divided into four parts, England, The Empire, The Church, and Church and State. Some of the documents may better be used by the teacher than by the pupil. Among those, however, which may be used with profit by students in secondary schools in courses of general European history are : Parts of the Salic Law, enough to show its typical character (pp. 176-189) ; Decree of Emperor Henry IV concerning a Truce of God, giving illustration of the customs of the period (pp. 208-211) ; "Golden Bull" of Emperor Charles IV (pp. 220-261)—particularly interesting because of its form ; foundation of the

## Mediæval and Modern History 63

University of Heidelberg (pp. 262-266),—an interesting example of the university's relation to the State and to law; Rules of St. Benedict and St. Francis giving the historical foundation of the orders (pp. 274-314, 344-349); "Formulæ Liturgicæ" in use at ordeals, showing their solemn and sacred character (pp. 314-319); Liutprand's report of his mission to Constantinople (pp. 441-477),—most interesting in its originality and humor.

UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA, DEPARTMENT OF HISTORY, *Translations and Reprints from the Original Sources of European History* (Philadelphia, 1894-1900).—An invaluable series of sources, still in course of publication. Six regular volumes are now complete, besides extra volumes on the Italian and German Renaissance. The price of the individual number varies from ten to twenty cents. These translations are mentioned hereafter in connection with the various periods. The Department has recently made the following announcement of a new series to be published by Longmans, Green & Co., New York.

"In the future a series of volumes will be published, one each year, containing a translation or reprint either of some complete historical work or source, or of extensive selections from the writings of a single author. Each volume will be edited with notes and an introduction by some competent scholar.

*Vol. I. Selections from the Writings of Zwingli.* Edited by SAMUEL MACAULEY JACKSON, D.D.

*Vol. II. The Lawes, Customes and Ordinances of the*

*fellowship of Merchant Adventurers of the Realm of England.* Edited by WILLIAM E. LINGELBACH.

*Vols. III and IV. A translation of Gregory of Tours ; Historia Francorum.* To be published in 1902 and 1903."

MERRICK WHITCOMB. *A Literary Source-Book of the Italian Renaissance.* (University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, 1898.)

MERRICK WHITCOMB. *A Literary Source-Book of the German Renaissance.* (University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, 1899.)

Professor Whitcomb also announces a series of Sixteenth Century classics as follows :

- I. Select Colloquies of Erasmus.*
- II. The Wander-Book of Johannes Butzbach.*
- III. The Autobiography of Thomas Platter.*
- IV. Selections from the Letters of Obscure Men.*

Smaller collections of sources illustrating phases of mediæval history are :

UNIVERSITY OF NEBRASKA, *Studies in European History.* (Edited by FRED MORROW FLING.) 3 vols. (30 Nos.). 1897-1900. Vol. II is entitled *Civilization of the Middle Ages* (Chicago, Ainsworth). The book is useful both as a suggestive outline of method for teachers and as a collection of material. The extracts, though short, are good and cover a wide range ; they are from Tacitus, the Koran, the charters of monasticism, and French municipal charters. Particularly interesting is the selection illustrating the customs and usages that



## Mediaeval and Modern History 65

governed the trades of Paris. An inexperienced teacher could get much from this little volume.

UNIVERSITY OF INDIANA, DEPARTMENT OF HISTORY, *Extracts from the Sources*, Bloomington, Ind. A series of historical leaflets of value in the study of European history.

CROZER THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY, *Historical Leaflets*, Chester, Pa., 1901.—A series of documents bearing upon religious history; six numbers to appear each year. For the first year, 1901, documents have been chosen relating to the Reformation period, such as the "Protest of Speier," "Tetzel's Theses on Indulgences," "Letters of Eck and Melancthon on the Leipzig Disputation," "Decree of the Diet of Worms," "Luther on the Robbing and Murdering Bands of the Peasants," and various pieces on the indictment and trial of Servetus. (For further information address Professor Henry C. Vedder, Chester, Pa.)

Considerable material of value exists in various literary collections, such as David J. Brewer's *The World's Best Orations, from the Earliest Period to the Present Time*, 10 vols. (St. Louis, Kaiser, 1899); Charles Dudley Warner's *Library of the World's Best Literature* (31 vols., New York, Peale & Hill, 1896-1899); and Garnett's *International Library of Famous Literature* (20 vols., London, 1899). Brewer's collection is richer in orations having importance in French history than in those bearing upon other countries. There are, however, usable extracts from Luther, Bismarck, Mazzini, and Kossuth.

### § 31. List of available Sources in Mediæval and Modern History.

T. A. ARCHER, *The Crusade of Richard I, 1189-92: Extracts from the Itinerarium Ricardi, Bohadin, Ernoul, Roger of Howden, Richard of Devises, Rigord, Ibn Alatir, Li Livres Eracles, Etc.* (London, Nutt, and New York, Putnam, 1888.)

CHARLES ARRIVABENE, *Italy under Victor Emmanuel: a Personal Narrative.* (2 vols. London, Hurst & Blackett, 1862.)

AUCASSIN AND NICOLETTE, *A Song-Tale of True Lovers.* Translated by M. S. Henry. (Boston, Copeland & Day, 1896.)

BAIREUTH, *The Memoirs of Frederica Sophia Wilhelmina, Margravine of Baireuth, Sister of Frederick the Great; with an essay by William D. Howells.* (2 vols. Boston, Osgood, 1877.)

OTTO VON BISMARCK.

Moritz Busch, *Bismarck in the Franco-German War, 1870-1871.* (2 vols. New York, Scribner, 1879).

Moritz Busch, *Bismarck, some Secret Pages of his History: being a Diary kept during twenty-five years' official and private intercourse with the great chancellor.* (2 vols. New York, Macmillan, 1898.)

## List of Available Sources 67

A. J. Butler, translator, *Bismarck, the Man and the Statesman: being the Reflections and Reminiscences of Otto, Prince von Bismarck, written and dictated by himself after his retirement from office.* (2 vols. New York, Harper, 1899.)—Called also Bismarck's "Autobiography."

Charles Lowe, editor, *Bismarck's Table-Talk; with an introduction and notes.* (Philadelphia, Lip-pincott, and London, Grevel & Co., 1895.)

Fitzhardinge Maxse, translator, *Prince Bismarck's Letters to his Wife, his Sisters, and Others,* 1844-1870. (New York, Scribner, and London, Chapman & Hall, 1878.)

Sidney Whitman, editor, *Conversations with Prince Bismarck; collected by Heinrich von Poschinger.* English edition, with an introduction. (New York, Harper, 1900.)

LOUIS ANTOINE FAUVELET DE BOURRIENNE, *Memoirs of Napoleon Bonaparte.* Edited by R. W. Phipps. (3 vols. New York, Scribner & Welford, 1885); also (4 vols., bound in 2, New York, Crowell, 1889).—Crowell's edition is the cheaper.

EDMUND BURKE, *Reflections on the Revolution in France.* Edited by E. J. Payne. (Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1888, and Bohn's Standard Library, New York, Macmillan.)

JOHN CALVIN, *Institutes of the Christian Religion.* Translated by Henry Beveridge. (2 vols. Edinburgh, 1879.)

COUNT CAVOUR, *Letters*. Edited by Count Nigra, translated by A. J. Butler. (London, Cassell, 1894.)

BENVENUTO CELLINI.

Thomas Roscoe, translator, *Memoirs of Benvenuto Cellini, a Florentine Artist, written by himself; containing a variety of information respecting the Arts and the History of the Sixteenth Century*. (Bohn's Standard Library. New York, Macmillan.)

John Addington Symonds, translator, *The Life of Benvenuto Cellini; newly translated into English*. (2 vols. London, Nimmo, 1888); (4th edition, 1 vol., New York, Scribner, 1896.)

CHANSON DE ROLAND. Edited and translated by Léonce Rabillon. (New York, Holt.)

CHRONICLES OF THE CRUSADES: *Contemporary Narratives of the Crusade of Richard Cœur de Lion, by Richard of Devizes and Geoffrey de Vinsauf; and of the Crusade of Saint Louis, by Lord John de Joinville; with illustrative notes and an index*. (Bohn's Antiquarian Library. New York, Macmillan.)

PHILIP DE COMMINES, *Memoirs; containing the Histories of Louis XI and Charles VIII, Kings of France, and Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy. To which is added The Scandalous Chronicle, or Secret History of Louis XI, by Jean de Troyes*. Edited with life and notes, by Andrew R. Scoble. (2 vols. Bohn's Standard Library. New York, Macmillan.)

GEORGE W. COX and EUSTACE HINTON JONES, *Popular Romances of the Middle Ages*. (London, Longmans, 1871.)

## List of Available Sources 69

CRESTIEN DE TROYES. *King Arthur and the Table Round. Tales chiefly after the Old French of Crestien of Troyes, with an account of Arthurian Romance and Notes.* By William Wells Newell. (2 vols. Boston, Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1897.)

DANTE ALIGHIERI, *The Divine Comedy.* Translated by Charles Eliot Norton. 3 vols., 1891-1892; by Thomas William Parsons, 1 vol. 1893; by Henry Wadsworth Longfellow, 1 vol., 1887 (15th edition): (Houghton, Mifflin & Co, Boston.)

*The New Life*, translated by Charles Eliot Norton. (Boston, Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1896.)

DELLA ROCCA, *The Autobiography of a Veteran*, 1807-1893. Translated and edited by Janet Ross. (New York, Macmillan, 1898.)

EGINHARD, *Life of Charlemagne.* Translated from the text of the *Monumenta Germaniæ* by Samuel Epes Turner. (New York, Harper, 1880.)

DESIDERIUS ERASMUS.

Francis Morgan Nichols, *The Epistles of Erasmus*, from his Earliest Letters to his Fifty-first Year arranged in order of time: English Translations from the early correspondence, with a Commentary confirming the chronological arrangement and supplying further biographical matter. (New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1902.)

Merrick Whitcomb, *Select Colloquies of Erasmus*, Department of History, University of Pennsylvania, 1901.

Ephraim Emerton, *Desiderius Erasmus of Rotterdam*. (New York, Putnam, 1899.)

J. A. Froude, editor, *Life and Letters of Erasmus*. (New York, Scribner, 1894.)

#### JEAN FROISSART.

Lord Berners, translator, *The Chronicles of Froissart*. Edited and reduced into one volume by G. C. Macaulay. (New York, Macmillan, 1895.)

Sidney Lanier, editor, *The Boy's Froissart*. (New York, Scribner.)—Useful for schools.

Henry Newbolt, *Stories from Froissart*. (New York, Macmillan, 1899.)—Useful for schools.

*Passages from Froissart*. Camelot Series. (London, Scott; New York, Lovell.)

GIUSEPPE GARIBALDI, *Autobiography*. Translated by A. Werner, with a supplement by Jessie White Mario. (3 vols. London, Smith & Innes, 1889.)

#### GESTA ROMANORUM.

Charles Swan, translator, *Gesta Romanorum, or Entertaining Stories invented by the Monks*. Revised and corrected by Wynnard Hooper. (Bohn's Antiquarian Library. London, Bell & Sons, 1899.)

Charles Swan, translator, *Select Tales from the Gesta Romanorum*. (New York, Putnam, 1895.)

WILLIAM EWART GLADSTONE, *Gleanings of Past Years, 1843-1879*. (7 vols. New York, Scribner, 1879.)

EDWARD EVERETT HALE, *Franklin in France*. (2 vols. Boston, Roberts, 1887-1888.)

## List of Available Sources 71

ERNEST F. HENDERSON, editor, *Select Historical Documents of the Middle Ages*. (Bohn's Antiquarian Library. New York, Macmillan.)

ERNEST F. HENDERSON, *Side-Lights on English History*. —See p. 123.

UNIVERSITY OF INDIANA, *Extracts from the Sources*. Bloomington, Ind.

THOMAS JEFFERSON, *Writings*. Edited by Paul Leicester Ford. (10 vols. New York, Putnam, 1892-1899.)

*Writings*. Edited by H. A. Washington. 9 vols. (Washington, Taylor & Maury, 1853-1854.)

JOHN DE JOINVILLE, *The Crusade of St. Louis*. See *Chronicles of the Crusades*, p. 68.

LOUIS KOSSUTH, *Memories of my Exile*. Translated from the original Hungarian by Ferencz Jausz. (London, Cassell, Potter, Galpin & Co., 1880, and New York, Appleton, 1894.)

MARTIN LUTHER.

Henry Bell, translator, *Selections from Luther's Table-Talk*. (Cassell's National Library. New York, Cassell, 1899.)

William Hazlitt, translator, *The Table-Talk of Martin Luther; with a memoir by Alexander Chalmers*. (Bohn's Standard Library. London, Bell & Sons, 1895.)

Henry Wace and C. A. Buchheim, editors, *First Principles of the Reformation, or the Ninety-Five*

*Theses and the Three Primary Works of Dr. Martin Luther ; translated into English, with theological and historical notes and introductions.* (Philadelphia, Lutheran Publication Society, 1885.)

NICCOLO MACHIAVELLI, *The Prince*. (With the *History of Florence*, in Bohn's Standard Library.) (London, Bell & Sons.) Also a cheaper edition in Morley's Universal Library. (London, Routledge, 1883.)

JOSEPH MAZZINI, *Life and Writings*. (6 vols. London, Smith, Elder, & Co., 1890-1891.)

CLAUDE FRANCOIS DE MÉNEVAL, *Memoirs illustrating the History of Napoleon I*, 1802-1815. Edited by Napoleon Joseph de Méneval, translated by R. H. Sherard. (3 vols. New York, Appleton, 1894.)

PRINCE METTERNICH, *Memoirs*, 1773-1835. Vols. I-IV translated by Mrs. Alexander Napier, Vol. V by Gerard W. Smith. (5 vols. London, Bentley, 1880-1882. New York, Scribner.)

MOHAMMED.

Stanley Lane-Poole, translator, *The Speeches and Table-Talk of the Prophet Mohammad ; with introduction and notes.* (Golden Treasury Series. London, Macmillan, 1882.)

Sir William Muir, translator, *The Corân : its Composition and Teaching, and the Testimony it bears to the Holy Scriptures.* (London, Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge, and New York, Pott, Young & Co. 1878.)



## List of Available Sources 73

HELMUTH VON MOLTKE, *Essays, Speeches, and Memoirs*.

Essays translated by C. F. McClumpha, speeches by G. Baxter, memoirs by M. Herms. (2 vols. New York, Harper, 1893.)

HELMUTH VON MOLTKE, *The Franco-German War of 1870-71*. Translated by Clara Bell and Henry W. Fischer. (New York, Harper, 1892.)

HELMUTH VON MOLTKE, *Letters to his Mother and his Brothers*. Translated by Clara Bell and Henry W. Fischer. (New York, Harper, 1892;) English edition (2 vols., London, Osgood, 1891).

HENRY MORLEY, editor, *Mediæval Tales*. Morley's Universal Library. (London, Routledge, 1884.)

GOUVERNEUR MORRIS, *Diary and Letters*. Edited by Anne Cary Morris. (2 vols. New York, Scribner, 1888.)

NAPOLÉON I.

D. A. Bingham, editor, *A Selection from the Letters and Despatches of the First Napoleon, with explanatory Notes*. (3 vols. London, Chapman & Hall, 1884.)

Lady Mary Loyd, translator, *New Letters of Napoleon I; omitted from the edition published under the auspices of Napoleon III*. (New York, Appleton, 1897.)

*The Table Talk and Opinions of Napoleon Buonaparte*. (Bayard Series. London, Sampson, Low & Marston, 1868.)

Ida M. Tarbell, editor, *Napoleon's Addresses : Selections from the Proclamations, Speeches, and Correspondence of Napoleon Bonaparte ; with an introduction.* (Boston, Joseph Knight, 1897.)

UNIVERSITY OF NEBRASKA, *Studies in European History.*  
Edited by Fred Morrow Fling. (3 vols. 30 Nos.  
Chicago, Ainsworth, 1900.)

NIEBELUNGENLIED.

Margaret Armour, translator, *The Fall of the Niebelungs.* (New York, Macmillan, 1897.)

Alice Horton, translator, *The Lay of the Niebelungs.* Edited by Edward Bell. (Bohn's Standard Library. London, Bell & Sons, 1898.)—A metrical translation.

ÉTIENNE-DENIS PASQUIER, *A History of my Time : Memoirs of the Chancellor Pasquier, 1789-1815.* Edited by Duke D'Audiffret Pasquier, translated by Charles E. Roche. (3 vols. New York, Scribner, 1893-1894.)

UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA, *Translations and Reprints from the Original Sources of European History.* (6 vols. Philadelphia, 1894-1900.)

PETRARCH : *The First Modern Scholar and Man of Letters : a Selection from his Correspondence with Boccaccio and other Friends, designed to illustrate the Beginnings of the Renaissance.* Translated with historical introduction and notes, by James Harvey Robinson, with the collaboration of Henry Winchester Rolfe. (New York, Putnam, 1898.)

## List of Available Sources 75

MADAME DE RÉMUSAT, *Memoirs*, 1802-1808. Edited by Paul de Rémusat, translated by Mrs. Cashel Hoey and John Lillie. (3 vols. New York, Appleton, 1880.)

ST. FRANCIS OF ASSISI.

Abby Langdon Alger, translator, *The Little Flowers of St. Francis of Assisi*. (Boston, Roberts, 1888, and Little, Brown & Co., 1898.)

T. W. Arnold, translator, *The Little Flowers of St. Francis of Assisi*. (London, Dent, 1898.)

Paul Sabatier, editor, *The Mirror of Perfection: the oldest life of St. Francis of Assisi, by his beloved disciple Brother Leo*. Translated by Sebastian Evans. (London, Nutt, 1898, and Boston, L. C. Page, 1899.)

DUKE OF SAINT SIMON, *Memoirs on the Reign of Louis XIV and the Regency*. Translated by Bayle St. John. (4 vols. London, Chapman & Hall, 1857); new edition (3 vols., Bickers, 1883); fourth edition, (3 vols., Swan, Sonnenschein & Co., 1889.)—This is an abridgment of the French work, which is in twenty volumes. References on p. 102 are to the earliest edition.

SAXE-COBURG. *Memoirs of Ernest II, Duke of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha*, 1818-1870. (4 vols. London, Remington, 1888-1890.)

NASSAU WILLIAM SENIOR.

*Conversations with M. Thiers, M. Guizot, and other Distinguished Persons during the Second Empire*. Edited by M. C. M. Simpson. (2 vols. London, Hurst & Blackett, 1878.)

*Journals kept in France and Italy from 1848 to 1852; with a Sketch of the Revolution of 1848.* Edited by M. C. M. Simpson. (2 vols. London, Henry S. King, 1871.)

JUSTIN H. SMITH, *The Troubadours at Home; their Lives and Personalities, their Songs and their World.* (2 vols. New York, Putnam, 1899.)

SULLY, *Memoirs of the Duke of Sully, Prime Minister to Henry the Great. Translated from the French; a new edition revised and corrected with additional notes and an historical introduction.* 4 vols. (Bohn's Standard Library, New York, Macmillan, 1891.)

TALLEYRAND.

Duc de Broglie, editor, *Memoirs of the Prince de Talleyrand.* 5 vols. (New York, G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1891-1892.) (Vols. I-II translated by R. L. de Beaufort, vols. III-V by Mrs. Angus Hall.)

M. G. Pallain, editor, *Correspondence of Prince Talleyrand and King Louis XVIII during the Congress of Vienna.* (New York, Scribner, 1881.)

GIORGIO VASARI, *Lives of the most Eminent Painters, Sculptors, and Architects; with notes and illustrations chiefly selected from German and Italian commentators.* (5 vols. Bohn's Standard Library, New York, Macmillan, 1900.)—Translated by Mrs. Jonathan Foster. There is a sixth volume (commentary) translated by J. P. Richter. There is a recent edition edited and annotated in the light of recent discoveries by E. H. & E. W. Blashfield and A. A. Hopkins. (4 vols. New York, Scribner.)

## The Church in the Middle Ages 77

VOLTAIRE, *Letters on England*. (Cassell's National Library. New York, Cassell, 1889.)

E. B. WASHBURN, *Recollections of a Minister to France*, 1869-1877. (2 vols. New York, Scribner, 1887.)

MERRICK WHITCOMB, editor.

*A Literary Source-Book of the German Renaissance*. (Philadelphia, University of Pennsylvania, 1899.)

*A Literary Source-Book of the Italian Renaissance*. (Philadelphia, University of Pennsylvania, 1898.)

ARTHUR YOUNG, *Travels in France during the Years 1787, 1788, 1789, with an introduction, biographical sketch, and notes*. Edited by M. Betham-Edwards. (Bohn's Standard Library, London, Bell & Sons, 1890.)

### § 32. References to the Sources of Mediæval and Modern History arranged by Periods.

The following references are to editions of which full titles will be found above, § 30, or below, § 50.

### § 33. The Church in the Middle Ages.

E. F. HENDERSON, editor, *Select Historical Documents of the Middle Ages*. Rule of St. Benedict, sixth century (pp. 274-314); Rule of St. Francis, thirteenth century (pp. 344-349).

F. M. FLING, editor, *Monasticism* (University of Nebraska, *Studies in European History*, Vol. II, No. 6).

BEDE, *Ecclesiastical History*.—See p. 131.

D. C. MUNRO, editor, *Life of St. Columban* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. II, No. 7); D. C. MUNRO and EDITH BRAMHALL, editors, *The Early Christian Persecutions* (*Ibid.*, Vol. IV, No. 1); A. C. HOWLAND, editor, *Ordeals, Compurgation, Excommunication, and Interdict* (*Ibid.*, Vol. IV, No. 4); D. C. MUNRO, editor, *Monastic Tales of the XIII Century* (*Ibid.*, Vol. II, No. 4).—The last is a collection of short incidents illustrating the superstitions of the time.

ST. FRANCIS OF ASSISI, *The Mirror of Perfection*. (Sabatier's edition.)—This book was written shortly after the death of St. Francis, and finished in 1227, by Brother Leo, his secretary and confessor. That we have this narrative in its present pure form is owing to the critical and sympathetic scholarship of M. Paul Sabatier (*Speculum Perfectionis, seu S. Francisci Assisiensis*, Paris, 1898). This is the earliest book that we have in regard to St. Francis and is also that from which his character emerges with the greatest vigor, originality, and poetry. "There is perhaps no document of the Middle Ages marked by such intensity of emotion" (Sabatier). Sabatier also speaks of the magnificence of style of St. Francis, as that of a *grand seigneur*, and of his humility of thought and action. This book is invaluable as giving us the picture of the moral

and physical sufferings of St. Francis and of the life of his disciples at the beginning of the Order.

*The Little Flowers of St. Francis of Assisi.* (Translations by Arnold. London, Dent, 1898, and Alger—Roberts, 1888.)—The author of this “most exquisite expression of the religious life of the Middle Ages” is unknown, though some commentators have ascribed it to a certain Ugolino Brumforte, who was born in 1262 and died in 1348. Like most real classics, it is charming to younger as well as to older students. The last part, from the section entitled “Of the Most Holy Stigmata” is more monkish and mystical; but as far as page 164 (Dent’s edition) there is nothing which reveals so well the simplicity, purity and loftiness of the best side of mediæval religion. Even younger students should read something of this kind to offset the prejudice of wholesale condemnation which is almost certain to come from the treatment of the church in school histories. Particular reference may be made to the story of St. Francis and the Wolf, pp. 64–68. In connection with the *Little Flowers* the student should read Matthew Arnold’s translation of the hymn of St. Francis, called the “Cantic of the Sun” (*Essays in Criticism*, First Series, 211–213).

### § 34. Mohammedanism.

MOHAMMED, *Speeches and Table-Talk.* (Lane-Poole’s translation.)—“The aim of this little volume is to present all that is most enduring and memorable in the public orations and private sayings of the prophet Mo-

hammad in such a form that the general reader may be tempted to learn a little of what a great man was and of what made him great." A large part of this small volume consists of chapters from the Koran, which the editor prefers to call Mohammed's "Speeches." From this selection are excluded the numerous stories that Mohammed borrowed from the Talmud, and the sections devoted to the personal vindication of Mohammed and the discomfiture of his many enemies, political and religious, the aim being to present simply the religious and ethical teachings of the prophet. "Reckoned by the number of verses, the Korân is only two-thirds of the length of the New Testament, or, if the wearisome stories of the Jewish patriarchs which Mohammad told and retold are omitted, it is no more than the Gospels and Acts."

"Besides the public speeches, which were held to be directly inspired by God, and indeed copied from a book supposed to exist in the handwriting of God—the chapters of the Korân—there were many sayings of Mohammad which were said in a private unofficial way in his circle of intimate friends, and which were almost as carefully treasured up as the others. These are the Traditions, or as I may call them, the Table-Talk of Mohammad, for they correspond more nearly to what we mean by table-talk than any other form of composition. The Table-Talk of Mohammad deals with the most minute and delicate circumstances of life, and is much more serviceable to the lawyer than the Korân itself. The sayings are very numerous and very detailed; but how far they are genuine it is not easy to determine." On the other hand, "the Korân is known beyond any



doubt to be at this moment, in all practical respects, identical with the prophet's words as collected immediately after his death . . . its genuineness is above suspicion" (Editor's Introduction, liii-liv).

This will probably be found the most usable book of source material concerning Mohammedanism. References may be made to the section on the religious law (pp. 133-138), the civil and criminal law (pp. 139-144), and the utterances of Mohammed on virtues and observances (pp. 147-182). There are, of course, several other editions of the Korân—such as Muir's *The Corân, its Composition and Teaching* (Society for the Promotion of Christian Knowledge) and the more common edition by Sale. Fling has published *Selections from the Koran* (University of Nebraska, *Studies in European History*, Vol. II, No. 3).

### § 35. Charles the Great.

EGINHARD, *Life of Charlemagne*. (Turner's translation.)—Eginhard, or Einhard, is best known as the biographer of Charles the Great. He was born, apparently, about 770 A. D. in Franconia near the Odenwald, his parents being of good birth and station. He was educated in the monastery of Fulda and came as a young man to the Frankish court. He soon won the confidence and favor of Charles, and for twenty years or more was the great king's inseparable companion. He was employed as supervisor of some of Charles's great building operations, particularly of the palace and

basilica of the capital, Aachen. Lewis, the successor of Charles, continued the imperial favor. Einhard withdrew from public affairs in 815, dying in the monastery of Seligenstadt about 840. He was a man of culture, a friend of Alcuin, sharing the revival of learning brought about under Charles. His most famous work is his *Vita Caroli Magni*, written out of gratitude to the Emperor. In form he imitates Suetonius, though with little success, his style being poor. This defect he seemed to feel himself, as is shown by his preface: "I submit the book. It contains the history of a very great and distinguished man; but there is nothing in it to wonder at besides his deeds, except the fact that I, who am a barbarian, and very little versed in the Roman language, seem to suppose myself capable of writing gracefully and respectably in Latin." But however much he may be derided from the point of view of style, "the fact remains," says Hodgkin, "that almost all our real, vivifying knowledge of Charles the Great is derived from Einhard, and that the *Vita Caroli* is one of the most precious literary bequests of the early Middle Ages." Reference may be made to the description of Charles the Great's relations to Eastern monarchs (pp. 43-45), the account of his public works (p. 45), the picture of his personal life (pp. 55-66).

R. P. FALKNER, editor, *Statistical Documents of the Middle Ages* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. III, No. 2); D. C. MUNRO, editor, *Selections from the Laws of Charles the Great* (*Ibid.*, Vol. VI, No. 5).—Various laws of Charles the Great,

on the Saxons, on the army, and on the education and the divisions of the kingdom.

JOANNES TURPIN, *History of Charles the Great and Orlando*.—An old source of Charlemagne romance, to be found in Henry Morley's *Mediæval Tales*. This chronicle, claiming to be the work of a friend and secretary of Charles, was in reality written about the beginning of the twelfth century. Its value is that it represents the popular idea of Charles current during the Middle Ages, his devotion to the church, his hatred of the heathen, and his remarkable powers. "The Church vouched for the authorship of Turpin, Archbishop of Rheims"; but after a while his book came to be known as "the Magnanime Mensonge, a lie heroic and religious." It was certainly based partly on traditions current at the time.

On the Charlemagne legends one may consult also J. M. Ludlow's *Popular Epics of the Middle Ages of the Norse-German and Carolingian Cycles* (2 vols., London, Macmillan, 1865), which contains many quotations from the Roland songs; also Cox and Jones's *Popular Romances of the Middle Ages* (London, Longmans, 1871).

*Chanson de Roland*. (Rabillon's translation.)

## § 36. The Crusades.

*Chronicles of the Crusades: Contemporary Narratives of the Crusade of Richard Cœur de Lion, by Richard of Devizes and Geoffrey de Vinsauf; and of the Crusade of Saint Louis, by Lord John de Joinville.*—This volume contains three of the most interesting contemporary chronicles of the crusades which have come down to us. Probably, however, the chronicle of Richard of Devizes and Vinsauf's Itinerary will be found too detailed for school use. References may be given to certain sections of the latter which illustrate the superstition of the time, the slight value attached to human life, the cruelty to enemies, the bravery, suffering, ardor of both contestants (pp. 131, 134, 161, 190, 196, 234, 270, 280, 304).

Joinville's is one of the most famous French chronicles of the Middle Ages. Jean de Joinville was born in 1224, of a good family in the province of Champagne; he died in 1319. He first appears at the French court in 1241, and seven years later he went with Saint Louis on the sixth crusade, returning with his master in 1254. His book falls into two parts, a collection of anecdotes of St. Louis, and an autobiography of the author during the six years of the sixth crusade. The latter constitutes real memoirs, treats constantly of the person of Joinville himself, is full of his adventures, difficulties and manner of living, details that have no connection with St. Louis. The most recent criticism ascribes this part of the book—in volume five-sevenths of the whole—to about the year 1272. The other part, that in

laudation of Louis IX, was probably composed in 1305, when Joinville was an octogenarian. Joinville showed a rare gift of observation, and of making precise and vivid descriptions. He gives us an admiring portrait of St. Louis, and a multitude of details of mediæval life and customs. The teacher will probably find the same objection of detail and monotony as in Devizes, but the style is more graphic. The first and last parts describing the character of Louis are interesting and usable (pp. 357-367; 516-526). The Hutton translation is a better one and more easily arranged (Sampson, Low, Marston & Co., London, 1868).

Several issues of the University of Pennsylvania's *Translations and Reprints* relate to the crusades: D. C. MUNRO, editor, *Urban and the Crusades* (Vol. I, No. 4), *Letters of the Crusaders* (Vol. I, No. 4), and *The Fourth Crusade* (Vol. III, No. 1). Especially absorbing are the speech of Urban at the Council of Clermont, Fulcher's account of the start, and some of the letters.

The publications of the Palestine Pilgrims' Text Society (32 nos. in 13 vols., with excellent single-volume general index, London, 1885-1897) contain some material of value on the crusades: *Letter from Sir Joseph de Cancy to King Edward I*, 1281 (No. 7); Be ha Ed-din, *Life of Saladin*, 1137-1193 (No. 32). In No. 31, pp. 60-66 (Jacques de Vitry's *History of Jerusalem*, 1180), there is an account of the degeneracy of the crusaders.

T. A. ARCHER, editor, *The Crusade of Richard I*, 1189-1192. "As a subject for historical study the Third Crusade possesses certain advantages that are

wanting to most other periods of the Middle Ages. It is one of the few events for which we have a really ample volume of contemporary evidence—evidence not representing one party or section only, but Christian and Mohammedan, Frenchman, Englishman and Franco-Syrian alike" (Preface). It is this varied evidence that Mr. Archer presents with historical notes and critical comment.

### § 37. Chivalry.

JEAN FROISSART, *Chronicles*. (Editions by Macaulay, Lanier and Newbolt.)—A vivid and famous account of things done in the fourteenth century; a remarkable portrayal of knightly life in the age of chivalry, uncritical but sympathetic and dashing. Froissart was no sober historian, tracing cause and effect with care, and patiently weighing evidence, but an impassioned storyteller, faithfully portraying the spirit of his time and order, intensely alive. "As Joinville narrated what he had himself *seen*, Froissart recounted what he had *heard*. His book is a collection of depositions industriously gathered and artistically arranged." Froissart was all his life the object of princely favors, was a great traveller, visiting England, Scotland, Italy, and other countries, and was devoted to the end to the task of constructing his chronicles. Many of his descriptions are those on which most secondary histories found their narratives as, for instance, his accounts of the Scotch, of Philip, of the battles of Crécy and Poitiers. He has been criticised for inaccuracy, shallowness, credulity, and for

## Literature During Middle Ages 87

snobbery, which led him to share all the prejudices of feudal society in its decadence. Though this criticism is in part just, yet he remains a great painter ; and his book gives, on the whole, by far the most faithful and vivid "*impression*" of the fourteenth century which we possess. Many of his portraits are imperishable, drawn in a style that is clean-cut, full of life and color.

F. M. FLING, editor, *Chivalry and the Mode of Warfare*. (University of Nebraska, *Studies in European History*, Vol. II, No. 4.)

JUSTIN H. SMITH, *The Troubadours at Home*. See below, p. 89.

### § 38. Literature During the Middle Ages.

JOANNES TURPIN, *History of Charles the Great and Orlando*.—See p. 83.

*Gesta Romanorum*, in Morley's *Mediæval Tales*.—This is a mediæval compilation of stories used by the preachers of the Middle Ages to adorn their discourses and enliven and enforce their teachings. It was the "the most popular story book of the Middle Ages," and "the source of much literature in that and later times." Two other editions of the *Gesta Romanorum* are those published by George Bell & Sons, Bohn's Antiquarian Library, London, 1899, and G. P. Putman's Sons, New York, 1895.

THE NEIBELUNGENLIED may be found in several editions: Margaret Armour, translator, *The Fall of the*

*Nibelungs* (New York, 1897); Alice Horton, translator, *The Lay of the Nibelungs* (Bell & Sons, London, 1898). In the latter edition is included Thomas Carlyle's essay on the *Nibelungenlied*.

KUNO FRANCKE, *History of German Literature*. (New York, Holt, 1901.)—Includes a description of early German poetry, with more or less quotation of it.

*Chanson de Roland* (Rabillon's translation).

SIR THOMAS MALORY, *Morte d'Arthur*. There are many editions.—The Globe edition (by A. T. Martin, New York, etc., Macmillan, 1886) is a single volume and has an excellent index. Far more interesting for boys and girls would be Lanier's *The Boy's King Arthur* (New York, Scribner). A fresh and interesting volume is Newell's *King Arthur and the Table Round: Tales chiefly after the Old French of Crestien of Troyes* (Boston, 1897).—Concerning the personal history of Crestien or, in English, Christian, nothing is known. He was a minstrel by profession who lived in the twelfth century. He was a French poet who sang much of Arthur and the Round Table. These productions, though fanciful and unhistoric, are an important revelation in the mental history of the twelfth century, and in some ways are more instructive than chronicles. "If, however," says Mr. Newell, "Arthurian fiction must chiefly be esteemed as indicating the conditions of a changed society and the advent of a new fiction, it will also be recognized as essentially a monument to a single great writer, whose genius has permanently affected European conceptions. To Crestien of Troyes, more than all other influences is



## Literature During Middle Ages 89

to be ascribed the character of extant Arthurian story." There is a pristine freshness and purity about these stories that is wholly delightful, especially in the singleness and simplicity of the emotions they portray. They furnish a series of vivid pictures of poetic knight-errantry. The element of the supernatural enters largely into them. Quaint sayings and little homilies abound. We have here the stories of Perceval, Gawain, Merlin, Lancelot, the Quest of the Holy Grail, the Maid of Escalot, and the Death of Arthur. See also pp. 138-139.

JUSTIN H. SMITH, *The Troubadours at Home*.—A valuable book, presenting the best account that we have of this side of mediæval life; a work of sympathetic scholarship, based upon all the original material that remains of that civilization. The best of the troubadour songs have been translated into English, and put into the original forms; specimens of the troubadour music are also given. An excellent index facilitates the topical use of this book.

*Aucassin and Nicolette: A Song-Tale of True Lovers.* (Henry's Translation.)

DANTE ALIGHIERI, *The Divine Comedy*. (Translations by Norton, Parsons, and Longfellow.) "Dante remained within the pale of Mediæval thoughts, and gave them full poetical expression. To him, in a truer sense than to any other poet, belongs the double glory of immortalizing in verse the centuries behind him, while he inaugurated the new age" (Symonds).

DANTE ALIGHIERI, *The New Life*. (Translation by Charles Eliot Norton.) Professor Norton calls *The New Life* the "first and tenderest love-story of modern literature."

### § 39. Education During the Middle Ages.

D. C. MUNRO, editor, *The Mediæval Student* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. II, No. 3).—Contains material illustrating the privileges of the students granted by various monarchs, the course of study, the errors prevalent and condemned, and an interesting selection from Jacques de Vitry on student life.

CHARLES H. HASKINS, *The Life of Mediæval Students as illustrated by their Letters* (*American Historical Review*, III, 203-229).—Very interesting.

T. B. MOSHER, *Mediæval Latin Students' Songs*. (Bibelot Series.) Portland.—Reprints several of the songs which John Addington Symonds translated into English verse and published in 1884 in an edition which it is now difficult to obtain.

### § 40. The Renaissance.

MERRICK WHITCOMB, *Literary Source-Book of the Italian Renaissance*.—This book can be used profitably in secondary schools. Most of the selections would appeal strongly to the pupil's imagination, enabling him better to get a conception of the period. The struggle between theology and classical learning is brought out vividly in the stories from Boccaccio and Sacchetti (pp. 15-32). The absurdities of the priests are neatly hit

off in the *Facetiae* of Poggio; and his account of the death of Jerome of Prague is interesting and valuable (pp. 33-47). The lives of Nicholas V and Pius II by Platina and Vespasiano, and the account of the founding of the libraries, are typical and illuminating (pp. 62-80). The extract from the Prince of Machiavelli is good (pp. 84-90). The exploits of Cellini at the sack of Rome give an idea of the warfare of the time, and his account of the fixing of the value of the Perseus vividly portrays the relation of patrons to artists at that time (pp. 110-117). This book is heartily to be commended.

J. H. ROBINSON and H. W. ROLFE, *Petrarch: the First Modern Scholar and Man of Letters*. A Selection from his Correspondence with Boccaccio and other Friends. —A book of great charm and interest, revealing a most attractive personality and a most fascinating period in the history of culture. The letters are clear and graceful, full of individuality, yet reflecting and suggesting a universal movement. They are selected and arranged so wisely as to bring out all their force, with only enough comment to hold them in just proportion to the life and times of the author.

There are few of these letters which would not be interesting to bright students. The following, perhaps, have special value in throwing light on the manners and thought of the time: On difficulties of correspondence (pp. 53-55); letter to posterity, with its brilliant mention of famous places and persons (pp. 59-76); attitude of Florence toward her literary sons (p. 117); the

goldsmith, Petrarch as a literary guide and master (pp. 169-174); attitude toward Dante (pp. 178-190); attitude toward women (pp. 191-196); scholarship of the age (pp. 210-214); on the place of the classics (pp. 243, 279); relation of religion and poetry (pp. 261, 384); on difficulties of the scholar's life, scarcity of copyists (pp. 275-278); letters on travel (pp. 298-325); on Rienzi (pp. 341-357).

BENVENUTO CELLINI, *Life*. (Symond's translation.) *Memoirs written by himself*. (Roscoe's translation).—The better translation is that by Symonds; it is more accurate and more attractive in style. The great importance of these *Memoirs* is shown in the introduction by Symonds, the authority on the Italian Renaissance. He calls Cellini "the composer of one of the world's three or four best autobiographies," and pronounces his book "the most complete and lively source of information we possess regarding manners, customs, ways of feeling, and modes of acting in the sixteenth century. Those who have made themselves thoroughly familiar with Cellini's *Memoirs* possess the substance of that many-sided epoch in the form of an epitome. It is the first book which a student of the Italian Renaissance should handle in order to obtain the right direction for his more minute researches. . . . From the pages of this book the Genius of the Renaissance, incarnate in a single personality, leans forth and speaks to us. . . . He touched the life of that epoch at more points than any person who has left a record of his doings. He was the first goldsmith of his time, an adequate sculptor,

a restless traveller, an indefatigable workman, a Bohemian of the purest water, a turbulent bravo, a courtier and companion of princes; finally, a Florentine who used his native idiom with incomparable vivacity of style. These qualities combined in a single personality, strongly marked by specific characteristics, yet peculiar to the sixteenth century in Italy, render him unique as a guide through the labyrinth of that brilliant but perplexing epoch."

An excellent critical introduction and index render easy the topical use of Symond's translation. Perhaps the best topic to refer to would be the history of Cellini's most famous work of art, the Perseus. It is related in full here and by it we get an insight into Cellini's character, the conditions under which Italian artists worked and their relations to their patrons (pp. 380-392, 416-427, 443-457).

NICCOLO MACHIAVELLI, *The Prince*. (Editions in Bohn's Standard Library and Morley's Universal Library.)—"We may accept this essay as the most profound and lucid exposition of the principles by which Italian statesmen were guided in the sixteenth century. . . . Machiavelli was the first in modern times to formulate a theory of government in which the interests of the ruler are alone regarded, which assumes a separation between statecraft and morality, which recognizes force and fraud among the legitimate means of attaining high political ends, which makes success alone the test of conduct, and which presupposes the corruption, venality, and baseness of mankind at large" (Symonds).

This pamphlet is short (about eighty pages) and reveals the political features of the Renaissance as clearly as Cellini's *Memoirs* do the artistic and literary and social. Though much of it may be too advanced for secondary students, many chapters would be easily understood and would provoke lively discussion. A chapter in point is ch. xviii, "Whether Princes ought to be Faithful to their Engagements."

GIORGIO VASARI, *Lives of the most eminent Painters, Sculptors, and Architects*. Translations by Foster and by Blashfield.—Vasari was an Italian artist who lived from 1513 to 1574. His reputation rests mainly upon this history of Italian art, which was published in 1550. Mrs. Foster's translation first appeared in 1850. Many of these lives are those of Vasari's own contemporaries and acquaintances. Their accuracy has been attacked in many particulars; but they are a valuable source, if used with care. Many of the biographies are of unimportant men; but classes might very well read those of Raphael, Michel Angelo, Leonardo da Vinci, and Titian.

MERRICK WHITCOMB, *Literary Source-Book of the German Renaissance*.—The most useful selections are those from Butzbach and Platter, relating to the struggles of young students, and possessing all the interest of personal narrative simply and vividly told. The passing of the Renaissance spirit beyond the Alps is shown in translations from Reuchlin, Von Hutten, and Erasmus.

For the Renaissance one must of course consult the writings of Erasmus (see pp. 98–99).

For the history of France at the moment of contact with Italy at the close of the fifteenth century, the most important work is the following:—

PHILIP DE COMMINES, *Memoirs*. (Scoble's edition.) —Philip de Commynes was the last of the Chroniclers of the Middle Ages and the first of modern historians. He has been called the "Father of Modern History." "His Memoirs," writes Hallam, "almost make an epoch in historical literature. He is the first modern writer who in any degree has displayed sagacity in reasoning on the characters of men and the consequences of their actions, or who has been able to generalize his observations by comparison and reflection." As a writer, Commynes was far inferior to Joinville and Froissart; as a thinker, far superior. Commynes was a statesman, a minister, a diplomat, and though his memoirs are more or less dry and often difficult, they are full of instruction. They cover the period of Louis XI and his son Charles VIII, from 1461 to 1498. The characterizations of Louis XI are interesting, not only in themselves, but as illustrative of a courtier's struggles between truth and loyalty to the king. Commynes was an unqualified admirer of Louis XI (see Vol. I, pp. 59-61, 117; II, 54-58). Some of the narratives of the battles and sieges are interesting, particularly as showing the nature of feudal warfare (Vol. I, pp. 33, 56, 103, 158). Most of the important treaties of the period are given in full. The disinterested account of Savonarola is very valuable (Vol. II, pp. 189-191, 284-287). There is an excellent index to this edition.

About a hundred and twenty editions of Communes' *Memoirs* have been published in the course of three centuries and a half, without speaking of translations into Latin, English, German, Italian, Spanish, Swedish, and Dutch. The first edition appeared in 1524. A searching criticism of the historical value of Communes is to be found in the *Revue Historique* for July and September, 1900. The author, B. de Mandrot, recognizing Communes' many inaccuracies and his tone of partiality for the princes, yet declares that he was on the whole just and moderate in his appreciations and that his book is a source of historical information "*infiniment precieuse*." Ever since its publication it has been considered a valuable book for the education of princes. Charles V called it his "breviary." Less cynical than Machiavelli, it nevertheless abounds in pessimism, disdain, and irony.

#### § 41. The Reformation.

J. H. ROBINSON and MERRICK WHITCOMB, editors, *The Period of Early Reformation in Germany* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. II, No. 6).—This furnishes important extracts from church authorities and from Luther on indulgences; Erasmus's disclaimer of participation in the Lutheran agitation; the "Twelve Articles of the Peasants"; and the instructions of Charles V as to treatment of the Protestants. These extracts illustrate clearly and forcibly the vital issues of the early Reformation, both political and theological, and they possess much of the



personal and descriptive element that naturally appeals to young people.

J. H. ROBINSON, editor, *The Pre-Reformation Period* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. III, No. 6).—Contains fresh material illustrating the early consciousness of the abuses in the church, cases of heresy, and the principles of the Inquisition. Particularly to be recommended are pp. 6-16, and Petrarch's letter describing the Papal court at Avignon (pp. 26-28).

MERRICK WHITCOMB, editor, *Period of the Later Reformation* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. III, No. 3).—In this selection the speech of Charles V is very valuable. Most of the extracts on the Genevan Reformation are too theological for school use. There is an interesting section descriptive of the people of France at the time of the Reformation.

MARTIN LUTHER, *First Principles of the Reformation, or the Ninety-Five Theses and the Three Primary Works*. (Wace and Buchheim's edition.)—This contains, besides the *Ninety-Five Theses*, Luther's *Address to the German Nobility*, his *Letter to Pope Leo X*, and his pamphlet *On the Babylonish Captivity of the Church*. Most of these are too detailed and theological, but parts could be profitably used: (1) The Introductory Letter to the *Theses* (pp. 3-5); this is clear, concise, and inclusive of Luther's most vital pleas.—(2) From the *Theses* (pp. 6-14) selections might be made; all of the first fifty might be referred to.—(3) In the *Address to the Nobility*, the section summing up the political cor-

ruption and usurpation of Rome (pp. 31-33, 49-50) is valuable; also Luther's views on the Bohemians and John Huss (pp. 74-78), and his ideas concerning Christian education (pp. 81-83).

MARTIN LUTHER, *Selections from [his] Table-Talk*. (Bell's translation, in Cassell's National Library.)—There is very little in this which could not be used advantageously in secondary schools. It is most valuable in showing the character of Luther, his philosophy, his ideas of nature, and of religion apart from theology, and the quaint allegorical turn of his mind. The account of the journeys to Worms (pp. 174-181) and Augsburg (pp. 61-63, 182-184) are interesting as records of important events. His personal limitations and those characteristic of the period are shown by his own words. The style is simple and clear.

MARTIN LUTHER, *Table-Talk*. (Hazlitt's translation.)—This is fuller than the Cassell edition, but hardly as useful for the young student.

JOHN CALVIN, *Institutes of the Christian Religion*. (Beveridge's translation.)—The "Prefatory Address" by John Calvin to Francis I, King of France (I, 3-20), can well be used; it reveals the spirit in which Calvin wrote.

DESIDERIUS ERASMUS (Emerton's *Erasmus*, Froude's *Life and Letters of Erasmus*, Nichols' *Epistles of Erasmus*.)—Liberal extracts are made by these authors from the correspondence and published works of Erasmus. While some of these are too much concerned with subtle doctrinal questions to be useful to young students, there

are many that have a general interest and are easily comprehensible. Erasmus's own racy and vivid personality, his attitude toward humanists and reformers, his hostility to the superstitions and follies of his time, his relations to the universities and learned men of the day, are all interestingly revealed and form an absorbing story.

References: Emerton's *Erasmus*: Vinegar College (pp. 36-38); pulpit oratory in Rome (pp. 149-151); court life (p. 188); description of the printer Froben (pp. 232-235); on formal religion (pp. 98-99); attitude toward Luther (pp. 298-307, 310-319); attitude of self-defense (pp. 347-349); self-analysis (p. 360); attitude toward the Pope (pp. 373-374). Froude's *Life and Letters of Erasmus*: On England (pp. 39, 95-96, 193); on Colet (pp. 97-100); criticisms of the Church (pp. 121-123); description of a journey (pp. 221-225). Particularly graphic and interesting are the letters connected with Luther and the Protestant Reformation (pp. 207-210, 243-249, 253-255, 259-272, 278-280, 284-286, 293-296, 300, 305, 317-318, 327-332, 340, 342-343, 356, 363-365).

## § 42. The French Monarchy.

DUKE OF SULLY, *Memoirs*. (Translation in Bohn's Standard Library. This work is divided into thirty-two books, a division followed below in the references.)—The strife of a factious nobility, a generation of religious wars, and long years of shameful abuses in financial administration had combined to reduce France to a pitiable condi-

tion at the close of the sixteenth century. Rehabilitation was the joint work of Henry IV and the Duke of Sully. In the *Memoirs* of the great minister is presented a marvelously minute account of the military, political, and administrative affairs of France during almost the entire private as well as public life of Henry IV. Want of method, disconnectedness, and glaring defects of style—of which diffuseness is the chief—detract greatly from the attractiveness of the *Memoirs* to the general reader. They are, however, useful for the teacher. For the historical student the chief value of the work lies in the fact that the information given is at first hand, from a narrator who was not only a keen observer but also an actor, and frequently a leading actor, in the stormy scenes he describes. Thus, in the description of massacre of St. Bartholomew (Book I), we have the testimony of an eye-witness. It is Sully himself who escapes, as well as the King of Navarre. In such important military operations as the battles of Arques and Ivry (Book III) and the siege of Dreux (Book IV) Sully was not only an observer but a conspicuous actor. The considerations which moved the king to abjure the Protestant faith, as detailed in Book V are of importance in relation to the oft-repeated assertion that Henry's religious convictions were of a half-hearted nature and that he looked upon apostasy as a question more of honor than of conscience. Sully's highest services to his king and country lay in the field of economic and administrative reform. Imbued with a false doctrine of national sufficiency, he forbade the exportation of gold and silver (Books XII–XIII) ; but he stimulated agricultural pur-

suits by the removal of export duties on grain and thus enabled France to dispose of her surplus in foreign markets. He was less tender with the nascent manufacturing interests, and the encouragement which those interests did receive was due to the broader statesmanship of the king (Book XVI). As a minister of finance Sully deserves to rank with Colbert and Turgot. He accepted the old system of taxation as he found it, but labored unceasingly to correct abuses in assessment and collection (Books XXI, XXV-XXVI). The policy of Henry IV toward the nobles is helpfully set forth in the *Memoirs*. Henry intrusted his affairs of state to well-tried men of business of inferior rank, and by this and other means earned the cordial resentment of the nobility of the sword. Points in Henry's struggle with the nobility worthy of careful attention as supplied by Sully are: the conspiracy and execution of Biron and the edict against duels (Book XIII); the arrest of the Count of Auvergne (Book XVIII); the treatment of the Duke of Rohan (Book XX); the intrigues of the Duke of Bouillon (Books XXI-XXII).

These *Memoirs* were for a long time considered a principal source for the history of Henry IV, but less value is attached to them at present. They show plainly the defects too often present in memoirs and which render their use dangerous. They were written in retirement and reveal a marked political and personal tendency, a desire to exalt the author, whose services were no longer required, and a willingness even to falsify documents to this end. The best German criticism holds that the "Great Design" of Henry IV never entered the mind

of that monarch but was the pure invention of Sully, after Henry's death and his own dismissal from office, the purpose of the invention being the glorification of himself and the King at the expense of their respective successors.

DUKE OF SAINT SIMON, *Memoirs on the Reign of Louis XIV and the Regency*. (St. John's translation, 4 vols., 1857.)—This work forms a minutely detailed picture of the Court of Versailles during the last twenty years of the reign of Louis XIV and the ensuing eight years of the Orleans Regency. This period corresponds to the long term of court life of St. Simon, ending in 1723. The author writes as an eye-witness, and the chief value of the work consists in the detailed representation it affords of the internal as well as the external life of the most splendid of European courts. The intrigues, the punctilios, the gorgeousness, the pitifulness, the comedies, the tragedies, are revealed by the historian of the old aristocracy with something like photographic fidelity. The portrait he presents of the Grand Monarch is not a flattering one: it is Louis in undress, and not *Louis le Roi* in his curled peruke and royal robes. He exhibits unsparingly the heartlessness of the "first gentleman" in Europe by such incidents as the death of D'Avaux (II, 46-47), and that of Madame de Montespan (II, 127); his meanness in stooping to flatter a low-born financier for an interested purpose (II, 164, 165); his weakness in surrendering to the cajoleries of Madame de Maintenon the important advantage to his country that Chamillart had prepared to secure in the recovery of Lille (II,

211-213). The king's enormous vanity, his ignorance, his mistakes in war, are analyzed (III, 225-236), as well as his excessive politeness (III, 238-239) and his love of magnificence (III, 240-244). An interesting survey of the external life of the Court is given (III, 280-293).

St. Simon's views are strictly those of a member of the old aristocracy. Note, for instance, the incredibly serious tone he adopts in discussing mere matters of etiquette (III, 11-12): undoubtedly the question of the Duke of Maine's precedence was a matter of far more absorbing interest than any question of impending bankruptcy. The style of St. Simon, particularly in analyzing character, is pithy, epigrammatic, and cutting. His statements with reference to many of his contemporaries are to be carefully scrutinized. The *Memoirs* are the work of a man who cherished an intense pride in noble birth, and whose life had been embittered, before the work was completed, by the success of men whom he regarded as vulgar adventurers.

Taine makes a valuable criticism of the *Memoirs* of St. Simon in his *Essais de Critique et d'Histoire*.

WILHELMINA, MARGRAVINE OF BAIREUTH, *Memoirs*.—This autobiography is interesting as showing the influence of the French court abroad. It throws light upon the court of Berlin in the early part of the eighteenth century, and upon a typical petty German court, that of Baireuth, with its imitation of the great royal court at Versailles, "shabby to the point of raggedness in its assumption of pleasure." There is much mention here of

Frederick William, and some of Frederick the Great; there are descriptions of social and political intrigues and miseries, and sharp characterizations of prominent contemporaries. Allowance must, of course, be made for the strong and incisive individuality of the author.

### § 43. The French Revolution, 1789-1795.

MERRICK WHITCOMB, editor, *French Philosophers of the Eighteenth Century* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. VI, No. 1).—On the philosophy prevalent in France before the Revolution. Consists of extracts from the writings of Montesquieu, Voltaire, Rousseau, Diderot, D'Alembert, Holbach, Turgot, and Sieyès. Perhaps on the whole too mature for secondary schools; yet "Dogmas" by Voltaire (pp. 10-12), "The Philosopher" by Diderot (pp. 20-23), "Memorial on Municipalities" by Turgot (pp. 28-31), and "What is the Third Estate?" by Sieyès (pp. 32-35) might be used.

VOLTAIRE, *Letters on England* (Cassell's National Library).—Contains covert satire on France.

JAMES HARVEY ROBINSON, *Protests of the Cour des Aides of Paris—April 10, 1775*. 161 pages. The French text and English translation of a famous document presented to the King during the ministry of Turgot. An illuminating analysis and criticism of the French State under the Old Régime.

MERRICK WHITCOMB, editor, *Typical Cahiers of 1789* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*,



## The French Revolution 105

Vol. IV, No. 5).—Gives the demands of the three estates, as shown in the cahier from each one.

ARTHUR YOUNG, *Travels in France* (Betham-Edwards' edition).—A sober description of the economic and political conditions of France at the outbreak of the Revolution, as they were revealed to an intelligent and observant Englishman as he rode leisurely up and down and across France during the years 1787, 1788 and 1789. Young went to France to study the agricultural conditions prevailing there, and his book is one of the most authoritative sources on that phase of French life. He has been called "that wise and honest traveler."

References might be given to the following topics: Poverty and general wretchedness of the people (pp. 8, 18, 27, 123, 189, 197-198, 236, 273, 279, 318, 322); poor cultivation of the land (pp. 52, 70, 72, 137); expenditure of money for useless magnificence (pp. 10, 58, 132); wretched conditions of highways, streets and inns (pp. 54, 67, 92, 103, 113); signs of an impending revolution (pp. 97, 153, 188, 214, 315); defective administration of justice (pp. 49, 60, 279); customs of the people and court-ignorance (pp. 35, 39, 51, 84, 102, 229, 256).

Many descriptions in the writings of the American ministers abroad throw an interesting light upon conditions and events in France. E. E. Hale, *Franklin in France*; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (of the two editions, Washington's and Ford's, Washington's is by far the better, being much more nearly complete); Gouverneur Morris, *Diary and Letters* (edited by Anne

Cary Morris). Where these sets are not available, use could be made of C. D. Hazen's *Contemporary American Opinion of the French Revolution* (Baltimore, Johns Hopkins Press, 1897), in which are embodied the more important descriptions of Jefferson, Morris and Monroe. Passages of most interest are Jefferson's descriptions of France, both at the capital and in the provinces (pp. 6-26); the winter of 1788-89 (pp. 38-39); description of the Meeting of the States-General (pp. 40-41, 72-78); France in the spring of 1789 (pp. 64-72); an estimate of Louis XVI (p. 84); execution of the king (p. 117).

The most famous pamphlet on the Revolution was that written by Edmund Burke, published in 1790 under the title *Reflections on the Revolution in France*. This was a bitter criticism of the first year of the Revolution, and had great influence in shaping English public opinion. The best edition for students is that published in 1888 by the Clarendon Press, Oxford, and edited with a valuable introduction and notes by E. J. Payne.

A number of important documents, such as the "Decree abolishing the Feudal System," the "Declaration of the Rights of Man," the "Civil Constitution of the Clergy," and the "Memoir drawn up by Mirabeau for the King, in October, 1789"; "perhaps the most interesting and accurate contemporary review of the general political situation immediately after the transfer of the King and the Assembly to Paris"—have been carefully edited by Professor J. H. Robinson, *The French Revolution, 1789-1791* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. I, No. 5).

# § 44. The Napoleonic Era.

Of Napoleon's own productions we have some fragmentary pieces accessible in English. His correspondence, in thirty-two volumes, a collection of the first importance, has never been translated. There is, however, a volume recently published called *New Letters of Napoleon I; omitted from the edition published under the auspices of Napoleon III*, translated by Lady Mary Loyd. These letters range from the year 1800 to 1815. They have no continuity and could not well, as a whole, be used with young students; but they are very valuable as showing much of Napoleon's attitude toward relatives, associates, and public personages of the time, his terse expression of authority, and his jealous watch over every detail of government machinery. They constitute the kind of material which a teacher could use profitably—reading extracts to illustrate Napoleon's grasp of situations, his universal dominance in all departments of activity, his insight into the relation of cause and effect, his prejudices, and so forth.

Some of the important documents bearing on this period, such as the treaties of Campo Formio and Lunéville, the Berlin and Milan Decrees and the English Orders in Council, the formal abdication of Francis II as Holy Roman Emperor, and the

Prussian "Reform Edict" of 1807, have been published by the University of Pennsylvania: J. H. Robinson, editor, *The Napoleonic Period (Translations and Reprints, Vol. II, No. 2)*.

As revealing Napoleon's peculiar eloquence, which so often electrified his soldiers, reference may be made to a small collection entitled *Napoleon's Addresses*, by Ida M. Tarbell. A larger selection from his works is *A Selection from the Letters and Despatches of the First Napoleon*, by Captain D. A. Bingham. The papers are arranged chronologically with connecting notes, but are largely too technically military to be of much general use. Another book useful for studying the mind and character of Napoleon is *The Table-Talk and Opinions of Napoleon Buonaparte* (Bayard Series, 183 pages, with notes and index).

An extensive source of information in regard to Napoleon and his times is open to us in the writings of the numerous memoirs of the time. These are most useful; but, like all memoirs, they must be used carefully and with a due appreciation of the individual *motif* and competence of the author in every instance. Among the more popular and easily obtainable are the following:—

BOURRIENNE, *Memoirs of Napoleon Bonaparte*. (3 vols. Scribner & Welford; 4 vols. bound in 2. Crowell, 1889.) The references below are to the

Crowell edition.—Bourrienne was a schoolmate of Napoleon at Brienne, and was his private secretary from 1796 to 1802. His *Memoirs* are graphic and interesting, though inaccurate in many respects and, like all the memoirs of this time, to be received with caution. The parts most valuable for secondary pupils with a limited time for study of one period would be the well-selected letters and documents on Bonaparte's arrest during the Revolution (I, 23); his proclamations to his soldiers (I, 132-133, II, 331, III, 70, IV, 22); his orders and despatches (I, 145, 317, II, 195, III, 147, IV, 62, 100); the portraits of his character (I, 277-300, IV, 135); his conversations and narratives (II, 225, 291, 335, 375, III, 137-144, 178, 309, IV, 71). Bourrienne's account of the Egyptian campaign is interesting, particularly I, chs. xii-xiii. After dismissing Bourrienne in 1802, Napoleon chose Ménéval as his private secretary.

MÉNEVAL, *Memoirs illustrating the History of Napoleon I*, 1802-1815 (3 vols., edited by his grandson, Baron Napoleon Joseph de Ménéval). "The value of these *Memoirs* is scarcely proportional to their bulk: they contain neither inspiring narrative nor profound analysis. These volumes may serve to show what we knew before—that Napoleon elicited a blind, unquestioning devotion from civilians as well as from soldiers. Unstinted adulation and extravagant panegyric are the warp and woof of these books; from one end of them to the other the Baron will not admit a single shadow upon his hero." Still he tells some things about Napoleon's pri-

vate character and habits that are worth knowing, about his impulsiveness, megalomania, sleeplessness, habits of nocturnal labor, and so forth.

MADAME DE RÉMUSAT, *Memoirs* (edited by Paul de Rémusat).—A famous book of observations by a lady of Napoleon's court, personal, gossipy, always interesting, but chiefly valuable for the light it throws upon Napoleon in society, where he was least impressive. A student would be interested in almost any part of this volume. The following references could certainly be profitably used in discussing Napoleon: habits of work (pp. 372-390); relations with his relatives (pp. 77, 153, 170); attitude toward popular opinion (pp. 81, 137, 143); attitude toward literature and authors (pp. 51, 103, 134, 403, 408); the Duke d'Enghien affair (pp. 117-137); behavior in court society (pp. 77, 171, 210, 223, 493, 549); Josephine, (p. 376, divorce, 580-610); Talleyrand, Fouché, Louis Bonaparte (pp. 285, 363, 451, 489, 611).

A more sober and judicial personal narrative covering all the period of the Revolution, Empire, and Restoration is Chancellor Pasquier's *Memoirs*, in five volumes. While this is much too elaborate for school use, it would be of great value to the teacher. Passages such as his sober description of the storming of the Bastille, of the 18th Brumaire, of the execution of the Duke d'Enghien, of the second marriage, might be profitably assigned as topics.

Of the memoirs written by Napoleon's generals and describing campaigns and battles, the more generally

interesting are those of Baron de Marbot (translated by Arthur John Butler and published in two volumes by Longmans, Green & Co., London, 1892), and those of Baron Thiébault (translated by Arthur John Butler, and published in two volumes by the Macmillan Co., New York, 1896).

Both of these were written long after the event, and contain many errors and fabrications; both are too anecdotal. They are, however, of value in presenting the spirit of the army under Napoleon. On these and other military memoirs see a review by Albert Sorel, entitled *Mémoires de Soldats*, published in his *Lectures Historiques*. (Plon, Paris, 1894.)

For the political and diplomatic history of these times, reference must be made to Metternich's *Memoirs* (5 vols., translated by Mrs. Alexander Napier) and Talleyrand's *Memoirs* (5 vols., edited by the Duc de Broglie and translated by Mrs. Angus Hall.)—Metternich held the threads of Austrian diplomacy from 1809 to 1848, and was the most influential opponent of the French Revolution. Though the books are too elaborate and detailed for the secondary schools, reference might be made to Metternich's account of the interview with Napoleon at Dresden, June, 1813. Talleyrand's *Memoirs* were awaited with great impatience, only appearing after a long delay in 1890. Their authenticity has been gravely impeached by M. Aulard, *Études et Leçons sur la Révolution Française* (2 vols., Paris, Alcan, 1898), II, 284–307. A defence has been made by the Duke de Broglie, executor and editor, in the preface to the fifth volume. M. Sorel has published a keen criticism of the

memoirs in his *Lectures Historiques* (Plon, Paris, 1894). His thesis is that Talleyrand wrote the memoirs to further his own interests under the Bourbon Restoration, not to give a correct record of his life, that while authentic they must yet be used with great caution.

A book of undoubted authenticity and value is *The Correspondence of Prince Talleyrand and King Louis XVIII during the Congress of Vienna*, edited by M. G. Pallain. This contains over sixty letters of Talleyrand, preserved in the Archives of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs at Paris and now translated for the first time. It is of value to teachers.

Interesting notes on Napoleon's return from Elba, and on Paris during the Hundred Days, are contained in John Quincy Adams's *Memoirs* (Philadelphia, Lipincott, 1874-1877), III, ch. x. Adams was then in Paris. Contemporary English descriptions of the battle of Waterloo are in Henderson, *Side-Lights on English History* (see pp. 123-124 below).

### § 45. Nineteenth Century Continental History.

The three or four sources most useful in connection with a brief survey of the nineteenth century in Europe cover the history of Germany and Italy and have reference mainly to the lives of those connected with the unification of these two countries :—

J. H. ROBINSON, editor, *The Restoration and the European Policy of Metternich, 1814-1820* (University



of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. I, No. 3).—Contains the following valuable documents: the "French Constitutional Charter of 1814," the "Text of the Holy Alliance," the "German Act of Confederation (1815)," "Anti-Revolutionary Legislation based upon the Carlsbad Resolutions," and the "Circular of Troppau."

BISMARCK, *Letters to his Wife, his Sister, and Others*, 1844-1870. (Maxse's translation.)—These letters furnish an insight into Bismarck's character not generally afforded by histories and biographies. The charm of the style and the luminous appreciation of every situation, the clever descriptions of persons and places, and the artistic feeling for the beautiful in nature and life render them fascinating reading. The lover, husband, and father, are most interestingly portrayed (pp. 10, 15, 29, 36, 96); his philosophy of life and religious views are frankly suggested (pp. 71, 161, 242); his early political views while ambassador to Frankfort, St. Petersburg, and Paris (pp. 33, 72, 78, 96, 108-116, 141-143, 146-150, 164, 215, 220).

CAVOUR, *Letters*. (Butler's translation, edited by Count Nigra.) Though few in number and limited in range, these letters like Bismarck's, afford an insight into the character of Cavour and the patriotic interests of his life. The important questions with which he was grappling are revealed here with great simplicity and clearness; and as he writes of them to one whom he trusts completely, the revelation of his own honesty, daringly high ideals, peculiar balance, common sense, and sagacity

constantly grows. Interesting topics are: his care for agriculture and its relation to his wider life (pp. 32, 81); his theories concerning church and state (pp. 41, 83, 102, 105), and concerning methods of reform (pp. 65, 68, 71, 74, 89, 91-93); his faith and perseverance (pp. 79, 87, 114).

GARIBALDI, *Autobiography*. (Werner's translation.) —A book of endless adventure that would greatly interest a boy or a girl. Parts might be selected for reference, such as those descriptive of his youth and education, his relations toward the reigning powers, the devotion of his soldiers, the Sicilian campaign.

MAZZINI, *Life and Writings*. 6 vols.—The parts most available for school use are those describing the awakening of his purpose (I, 1-5); the Carbonari and its treatment by government (I, 15-34); the founding of Young Italy (I, 34-38); his principles (I, 97-112, 182-183); his faith (II, 85, 86-94, 113, 143).

The books just cited are the sources that could be used with the greatest profit by young students. Others very valuable for teachers are the following:—

NASSAU WILLIAM SENIOR, *Journals kept in France and Italy from 1848 to 1852; with a Sketch of the Revolution of 1848*. NASSAU WILLIAM SENIOR, *Conversations with M. Thiers, M. Guizot, and other Distinguished Persons during the Second Empire*.—A continuation of the preceding work. The two furnish much valuable contemporary information of the events in Europe at the middle of the nineteenth century. E. B. WASHBURN, *Recollections of a Minister to France*, 1869—

1877.—Washburne was United States ambassador to France during the time indicated. His two volumes throw light upon the fall of the Second Empire, the Siege of Paris, and the Commune. **BISMARCK**, *Table-Talk*. (Lowe's edition.)—Bismarck's utterances on a wide range of subjects. *Conversations with Prince Bismarck*. (Poschinger's collection edited by Sidney Whitman.) *Bismarck, the Man and the Statesman: being the Reflections and Reminiscences of Otto, Prince von Bismarck, written and dictated by himself after his retirement from office*. (Butler's translation.)—Called also Bismarck's "Autobiography." Headlam, the latest biographer of Bismarck, says of these volumes that they have a great value "not so much because of the new facts which they record, but because of the light they throw on Bismarck's character and on the attitude he adopted towards men and political problems. With his letters and speeches, they will always remain the chief source for our knowledge of his inner life" (James Wycliffe Headlam, *Bismarck and the Foundation of the German Empire* (New York, Putnam, 1899), Preface). **MORITZ BUSCH**, *Bismarck, Some Secret Pages of his History*. **MORITZ BUSCH**, *Bismarck in the Franco-German War, 1870-1871*.—Memoranda of Bismarck's conversations during that war. **HELMUTH VON MOLTKE**, *The Franco-German War of 1870-71*. (Bell and Fischer's translation.)—A description, technically military, of the Franco-German War by the real commander of the German forces and designer of the campaign. **HELMUTH VON MOLTKE**, *Essays, Speeches, and Memoirs*. (Translated by McClumpha, Baxter, and Herms.)

HELMUTH VON MOLTKE, *Letters to his Mother and his Brothers*. (Bell and Fischer's translation.)—The letters cover the period 1823–1890. DUKE OF SAXE-COBURG, *Memoirs*.—Cover the period 1818–1870. Much information upon general European politics during the middle of the nineteenth century. CHARLES ARRIVABENE, *Italy under Victor Emmanuel*.—This is largely a record of personal experiences during the years 1859–1861. The author was correspondent of the *London Daily News*, and was with the French and Italian armies. ENRICO DELLA ROCCA, *The Autobiography of a Veteran*, 1807–1893. (Janet Ross's translation.) LOUIS KOSSUTH, *Memories of my Exile*. (Jausz's translation.)—This book has to do mainly with the Austrian war of 1859. Contains specimens of Kossuth's oratory in England. Thorough discussion of the Italian question. W. E. GLADSTONE, *Gleanings of Past Years*.—Vol. IV contains his famous letters on the Neapolitan government. Selections from the orations or writings of Bismarck, Gambetta, Kossuth, Mazzini and others are to be found in BREWER'S *World's Best Orations*.

## Part IV.

### English History.

#### § 46. Selection and Bibliography.

The sources of English history are so numerous that no attempt has here been made to give a complete list of them. Sources which are readily accessible to all have alone been considered; and of such only those have been included which are adapted for school use. Furthermore, the complexity of modern life is so great, and—even with the limitations that have just been stated—the source material of the period is so extensive, that the history of the last two centuries has not been developed in this part of the work except by reference to the general collections that cover this period, and suggestions as to the use of them.

The standard bibliography of both secondary material and sources, for the period of English history which it covers, is Charles Gross, *The Sources and Literature of English History from the Earliest Times to about 1485* (New York, Longmans, 1900). Within its chronological limits this work is unrivalled

for thoroughness and scholarship. Its convenient arrangement of material, its system of cross references, and its wonderfully complete index render possible with the least effort a complete list of all material upon any period or subject within its field. Nearly every volume mentioned by Professor Gross has been personally examined by him, and his brief characterizations of these may be accepted as the work of an acknowledged authority. The book is therefore indispensable to all students of English history, and should be included in every school library.

Dr. G. C. Lee, in his *Source-Book*, Part I, gives a "working bibliography" of the sources down to the close of the eighteenth century. This is valuable simply because it is a list of sources, although it does not include many collections and editions especially suitable for school use. After each title Dr. Lee gives a brief statement of the scope and value of the work; and in the main body of the book prefaces each selection from the sources with a short account of the author or of the work from which the selection is made. In connection with any list of sources, a critical estimate of the different works is most essential; and such may be found in Gardiner and Mullinger, *Introduction to the Study of English History* (London, Kegan Paul, 1894). C. K. Adams, *Manual of Historical Literature* (3d

## Selection and Bibliography 119

edition, New York, Harper, 1888), deals mainly with secondary histories, but contains brief and very good descriptions of a few of the more important sources. Professor Colby in his *Selections from the Sources*, and Professor Kendall in her *Source-Book*, do not include lists of sources, but each gives with every selection some statement regarding the author or the work. An admirable account of the sources of English history for the Middle Ages is James Gairdner, *England*, in the series *Early Chroniclers of Europe* (London, Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge, New York, E. and J. B. Young, 1879).

The best and most complete statement of authorities (though not in the most convenient form), together with a critical estimate of their value, is to be found in the bibliographical sketches appended to the various articles in the *Dictionary of National Biography*, edited by Leslie Stephen and Sidney Lee (63 vols., London, Smith, Elder & Co., 1885-1900; supplementary Vols. I-III, 1901). It may be consulted in any large library. Mention ought also to be made of the brief sketches of the more important authorities which preface the different sections of Green's *Short History of the English People* (New York, Macmillan, 1888) and of the references and criticisms in the notes and appendices of such works as Freeman, *Norman Con-*

*quest* (6 vols., Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1867–1879); Von Ranke, *History of England, principally in the Seventeenth Century* (6 vols., Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1875); and Lecky, *England in the Eighteenth Century* (8 vols., New York, Appleton, 1878–1890).

#### § 47. Collections of Sources in English History.<sup>1</sup>

CHARLES KENDALL ADAMS, editor, *Representative British Orations* (4 vols., New York, Putnam, 1885–1900).—An attempt to collect speeches which are famous not only as specimens of oratory, but as influences which have tended to change the course of English history. Such of these orations as are not too far advanced for the pupil will, therefore, be found of great service in interpreting English history of the period that they cover. In the introductions will be found necessary explanations of the political situations, and sufficient accounts of the careers of the speakers. To the original three volumes

<sup>1</sup>CHARLES BÉMONT, *Chartes des Libertés Anglaises, 1100–1305* (Paris, Picard, 1892), and WILLIAM STUBBS, *Select Charters* [to 1305] (Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1870), the two best collections of constitutional documents, are not included in this list. They are most serviceable books for advanced students, but not at all fitted for school use, as practically all of the documents are in Latin. This is not greatly to be regretted, however, for most of the documents have been translated and are to be found in other collections referred to in this report.



## Collections of Sources 121

a fourth volume, covering the period 1813-1898, edited by John Alden, has recently been added.

GEORGE BURTON ADAMS and H. MORSE STEPHENS, editors, *Select Documents of English Constitutional History* (New York, Macmillan, 1901.)—A collection of documents dealing with the constitutional and legal development of England from the time of the Norman Conquest through the reign of Victoria. It is the most complete collection of this character that has yet been published, and the acknowledged scholarship of the editors is sufficient guarantee of the quality of the work. Although the collection is intended primarily for college classes, it will certainly prove very serviceable to teachers, and it may be used in advanced school classes. All of the Latin and French documents have been translated into English.

WILLIAM CLARKE, *Political Orations, from Wentworth to Macaulay*. (Camelot Series. London, Scott, and New York, Lovell, 1889.)—Merely a collection of ten orations, each of more or less importance in itself, but not indispensable to such a study of English history as is made in our schools.

CHARLES WILLIAM COLBY, *Selections from the Sources of English History*, B. C. 55-A. D. 1832. New York, Longmans, 1899.—A collection of excellent short extracts from the sources of the whole course of English history, from the first invasion of the Romans through the third decade of the present century. In a single volume of only 350 pages, about one seventh of which is given up to explanatory matter, it would be

impossible to give anything like an adequate series of pictures of nineteen hundred years of English history, especially when the editor attempts to illustrate all sides of English life,—constitutional, political, economic, and social. No complete picture is attempted, and consequently no complete picture is presented,—not even of any particular period. But so far as the selections go they are, almost without exception, of a very high order ; and Professor Colby has supplied in his general introduction, and in the remarks which preface each extract, a sufficient explanation of the author or of the work from which the extract is taken, and the necessary historical setting. As an introductory book to study in original material by arousing interest and stimulating further reading and investigation, the work is of great value, and to a limited extent it can be used very successfully to supplement the narrative text-book.

SAMUEL RAWSON GARDINER, editor, *The Constitutional Documents of the Puritan Revolution, 1628-1660*. (2d edition, Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1899.)—An incomparable collection of statutes, proclamations, selections from speeches and letters, etc., which may be found somewhat too technical and difficult for the fullest use in the average school, but which are invaluable for teachers and advanced students. The editor's introduction will also prove most helpful in the interpretation of this period, on which Professor Gardiner is an authority.

ALBERT BUSHNELL HART, editor, *American History Told by Contemporaries* (4 vols., New York, Macmillan, 1897-1901), and *Source-Book of American His-*

*tory* (New York, Macmillan, 1899).—The series includes some pieces on English conditions during the epoch of colonization; on English arguments at the time of the Revolution; and on English diplomacy with the United States. See § 61 below.

ERNEST FLAGG HENDERSON, editor, *Select Historical Documents of the Middle Ages*. (Bohn's Antiquarian Library. New York, Macmillan, 1892.)—Devotes Book I,—or about one-third of the whole—to sources of English constitutional history from the time of William the Conqueror to the middle of the fourteenth century. These consist of translations of documents, which are taken almost exclusively from Stubbs, *Select Charters*, and include several that are not readily found elsewhere in translation,—such as certain laws of William the Conqueror, Richard I, and Edward I, “The Dialogue concerning the Exchequer” and “The Manner of Holding Parliament.”

ERNEST FLAGG HENDERSON, editor, *Side-Lights on English History* (New York, Holt, 1900).—An extremely interesting and valuable series of “extracts from letters, papers and diaries of the past three centuries,”—that is, from the reign of Elizabeth to the death of Queen Charlotte, 1818. In contrast to other source-books of English history, this one deals but little with constitutional development, attempting rather to bring out the personal traits of prominent personages and to describe the life and manners of the times. In this attempt the editor has succeeded wonderfully well, and the book is one that can be used to the greatest advan-

tage for a period in which the sources are so voluminous that a large library is necessary to meet the requirements of collateral reading. By no means the least valuable feature of this work is the reproduction of a large number of rare engravings.

MABEL HILL, *Liberty Documents* (New York, Longmans, 1901).—This work is a reprint of the most important constitutional documents, both English and American, so arranged as to show how the principles of English liberty were transmitted through the colonies to the United States. After each document are printed several extracts from contemporary writers, showing how they looked at the spirit of the document; and then follows a similar set of extracts of "Critical Comment" by prominent writers. The series extends from Henry I to the taking of the Philippine Islands by the United States. The book is especially useful in schools which have courses in both English and American history, and is to be recommended as a convenient repository of the great constitutional documents.

ELIZABETH KENDALL, editor, *Source-Book of English History*. (New York, Macmillan, 1900.)—Contains but few of what are technically called "documents." With this limitation, it is quite the best short collection of sources of English history that has appeared. The judgment shown in the selection of material and in the distribution of these selections—that is the proportionate share assigned to the various periods—is excellent. Indeed, the chief objection that the teacher can make will take the form of regret that the book is so short.

Marginal notes supply much very helpful information on the sources of the extracts, and also on events and persons referred to.

GUY CARLETON LEE, editor, *Source-book of English History*. (New York, Holt, 1900.)—A collection of extracts from the sources "from the first mention of Britain by ancient historians to the last great treaty with the Boers of South Africa," 1884. Though some "illustrative material not strictly documentary" is included, the work is in the main constitutional and political; on this side of English history it will prove most useful, both because of the fullness of many of the extracts, and also because many selections are here given that have hitherto been inaccessible to most students. The valuable bibliography of sources and explanatory statements in the main body of the work have already been mentioned (p. 118 above).

EDWIN DOAK MEAD, editor, *Old South Leaflets*. 125 nos., separate or in vols., (Boston, Directors of the Old South Work, 1883-.)—A series of small pamphlets presenting, in cheap and convenient form, sources which relate in the main to American history, but some of which deal with English history. A few of these will be referred to in the course of this report.

UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA, *Translations and Reprints from the Original Sources of European History*. 6 vols. (Philadelphia, 1894-1900.)—A series of pamphlets of convenient size (8vo., 20-40 pp.) containing extracts from the sources, edited and published by the

Department of History of the University of Pennsylvania. They are of varying utility for schools. The following deal with subjects in English history: Edward P. Cheyney, editor, *The Early Reformation Period in England* (Vol. I, No. 1), *English Constitutional Documents* (Vol. I, No. 6), *English Towns and Gilds* (Vol. II, No. 1), *England in the Time of Wycliffe* (Vol. II, No. 5), *English Manorial Documents* (Vol. III, No. 5), and *Documents Illustrative of Feudalism* (Vol. IV, No. 3); Arthur C. Howland, editor, *Ordeals, Compurgation, Excommunication, and Interdict* (Vol. IV, No. 4), and *The Early Germans* (Vol. VI, No. 3).

F. YORK POWELL, editor, *English History from Contemporary Writers*. 10 vols. (London, Nutt, 1887-1890. This series was originally placed in this country by Putnam's Sons, New York, and some of the volumes can still be obtained from them.)—An excellent series of small books of extracts from the sources, bringing out the significant features of the periods they cover rather than the brilliant passages of the chroniclers. The extracts from foreign languages are translated, and the passages from old English authors are put into modern spelling, so that these books can be readily used by any pupils. The short accounts of the writers quoted, the notes, appendices, tables, and illustrations, will be found very helpful. The volumes which have appeared in this series are: F. York Powell, editor, *King Alfred*; F. P. Barnard, editor, *Strongbow's Conquest of Ireland*; W. H. Hutton, editor, *St. Thomas of Canterbury*,

*Simon de Montfort and his Cause*, 1251-1266, and *The Misrule of Henry III*; T. A. Archer, editor, *The Crusade of Richard I*, 1189-1192; Joseph Jacobs, editor, *The Jews of Angevin England*; W. J. Ashley, editor, *Edward III and his Wars*, 1327-1360; Edith Thompson, editor, *the Wars of York and Lancaster*; W. F. Taylor, editor, *England under Charles II*, 1660-1678.

F. YORK POWELL, editor, *Scottish History from Contemporary Writers*. 4 vols. (London, Nutt, and New York, Putnam, 1890-1901.)—A companion series to *English History from Contemporary Writers*. The volumes that have appeared in this series are: G. Gregory Smith, editor, *The Days of James IV*, 1488-1513; Robert S. Rait, editor, *Mary Queen of Scots*, 1542-1587; Charles Sandford Terry, editor, *The Rising of 1745*, and *The Chevalier de St. George and the Jacobite Movements in his Favour*, 1701-1720.

GEORGE WALTER PROTHERO, editor, *Select Statutes and other Constitutional Documents illustrative of the Reigns of Elizabeth and James I* [1559-1625]. (Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1894.)—A companion volume to Gardiner, *Select Statutes*, and of equal value in both subject matter and introduction.

EDWARD SMITH, *Foreign Visitors in England and what they have thought of us*. (Book-Lovers' Library. New York, Armstrong, 1889.)—Really an essay descriptive of England and the English, chiefly in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, based upon the recorded observations of foreign visitors to England. The citation

of these travellers' own words is so frequent, however, that the book might better be described as a series of extracts from the sources, connected by a running and critical commentary by the editor. It is extremely interesting, and of considerable value as giving a picture of the life and character of the people.

H. L. STEPHEN, editor, *State Trials, Political and Social*. 2 vols. (London, Duckworth, and New York, Macmillan, 1899.)—Contains ten more or less important judicial cases, all, with a single exception, occurring in the seventeenth century. The author does not confine himself to a single speech or to an abstract of an argument, but in each case he has gathered and carefully selected a well-studied series of extracts presenting a complete story of the trial.

THOMAS PITT TASWELL-LANGMEAD, *English Constitutional History*. (London, Stevens & Haynes, 1875; 5th edition, Boston, Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1896.)—This is not to be regarded as in any sense a source-book. It is rather a secondary authority; but the author, in his treatment of English constitutional history, has reproduced in full several important documents, such as Magna Charta, the Bill of Rights, and the Act of Settlement. The notes and criticisms upon these documents will be found very helpful.

MARY TREMAIN, *A Survey of English History*. Chicago, Ainsworth, 1901.—Miss Tremain has in preparation a series of extracts from the sources, covering the whole of English history, but divided into ten parts or periods. Of these parts the first two have already



appeared, *Roman Britain* and *The Anglo-Saxon Period*. A perfectly valid criticism might be made on the brevity of the extracts, the lack of connection between many of the citations, and the confusion of sources and secondary authorities in the list of references that are given ; but to the teacher whose treatment of the subject agrees with that of the editor this collection will prove helpful, and it has the additional advantages of convenience and cheapness.

LEOPOLD WAGNER, editor, *Modern Political Orations*. (London, Unwin ; and New York, Holt, 1896.)—In this volume are collected twenty-four of the most notable examples of political oratory of the reign of Victoria. Except for the slightest sort of introduction, no critical comment or explanatory notes are included ; but as each of the speeches deals with some great and stirring public question, the collection is of value in that it presents in a convenient form specimens of oratory that are of interest in themselves and helpful to an understanding of the national life of the period.

GEORGE TOWNSEND WARNER, general editor, *English History Illustrated from Original Sources* (London, Adam and Charles Black, 1901). A new series. One volume has appeared, N. L. Frazer, editor, and covers the period 1307-1399. Other volumes are announced as follows : W. J. Corbett, 1215-1307 ; F. H. Durham, 1399-1485 ; Cunningham, 1558-1603 ; J. N. Figgis, 1660-1715.

### § 48. List of Available Sources in English History.

ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE (bound with Bede's *Ecclesiastical History*, Bohn's Antiquarian Library, New York, Macmillan. Edited by J. A. Giles.)—The *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, generally cited as the "English Chronicles" by Freeman (whose observations upon it in the first and fifth volumes of his *Norman Conquest* should be noted), "is the oldest historical work written in any Germanic language." Nominally it extends from 1 A. D. to 1154, but the records of the first centuries are evidently mythical or legendary. The commencement of this great work has been ascribed to King Alfred, but it is evident that many of the records were written long before his time. It is probable that it was an annual compilation, made at one of the chief monasteries in the kingdom, and reduced to its present shape at Alfred's bidding. It is regarded, therefore, as contemporaneous history from the sixth or the seventh century, and in the main is accepted as authoritative. It is especially valuable from the sixth century to the close of the Norman Conquest.

ASSER, *Annals of the Reign of Alfred the Great*. (Bohn's Antiquarian Library, New York, Macmillan. Edited by J. A. Giles, in *Six Old English Chronicles*.)—Asser, a monk of Celtic extraction belonging to the monastery of St. David's, who afterward became Bishop of Sherborne and died in the year 910, was an adviser of King Alfred and assisted him in his

## List of Available Sources 131

efforts to revive learning throughout the country. He lived on the most intimate terms with the king, being a member of his household for several months of each year. It is now very generally accepted that Asser was the author of the *Life of Alfred the Great*, which consists of two parts: (1) a chronicle of events extending from 849 to 887, drawn largely from an early version of the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*; and (2) a personal and original narrative of Alfred's career down to 893. In the form in which we ordinarily see Asser's *Life of Alfred*, passages have been interpolated from later and untrustworthy sources. Thus, the story of the burning of the cakes and the references to St. Neot are not authentic. The rest of the *Life*, however, is of interest and parts of it are of considerable value.

In the *Six Old English Chronicles*, Gildas is the only other chronicler who can be used to any advantage. Ethelwerd, Geoffrey of Monmouth, Nennius, and Richard of Cirencester contain little or nothing of value for our purpose.

BEDE, *The Ecclesiastical History of England*. (Bound with the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*. Bohn's Antiquarian Library, New York, Macmillan. Edited by J. A. Giles.)—Bede, or Bæda, "the Venerable" (673–735) was a celebrated English monk, whose name is the greatest in the ancient literature of England. A man of great learning, he devoted his life to study, teaching, and writing. His principal and most valuable work is the *Ecclesiastical History of the English People*, which covers the period from Cæsar's invasion to the

year 731. The first book—from the invasion of Julius Cæsar to the first mission of Augustine—is largely a compilation from Gildas and others. The second book gives an account of the mission of Augustine, and a narrative of events down to 633. The three remaining books are historically more valuable, because they rest “either on Bede’s personal knowledge, or on the statements of others equally well informed;” we are indebted to him for almost all our information of the period treated in the latter portion of this work. For his services to the cause of historical writing, perhaps also because later historians have so generally copied his work and too frequently without acknowledgment, Bede has been termed the “Father of English History.”

BEOWULF is the hero of an Anglo-Saxon epic poem of unknown authorship, the scene of action of which is laid in Danish and Swedish territories. It is now regarded as probably continental in its origin, and is fairly typical of the life of the coast-dwelling Germans of the sixth century. It has been translated into prose by John Earle, *The Deeds of Beowulf* (Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1892), and—a still better rendering—by J. R. Clark Hall, *Beowulf and the Fight at Finnsburg* (London, Swan, Sonnenschein & Co., 1901); into verse by William Morris and A. J. Wyatt, *The Tale of Beowulf, sometime King of the Folk of the Weder Geats* (New York, Longmans, 1898), by J. M. Garnett, *Beowulf, an Anglo-Saxon Poem* (2d edition, Boston, Ginn, 1885), and by J. L. Hall, *Beowulf, an Anglo-Saxon Epic Poem* (Boston, Heath, 1892).

## List of Available Sources 133

GILBERT BURNET, *History of My Own Time*. 2d edition. 6 vols. (Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1833.)—Burnet (1643–1715) was a learned Scotch clergyman, who took a prominent part in the Revolution. He was rewarded for his services, after the Prince of Orange was established on the throne, by being made Bishop of Salisbury. His *History* contains a good deal of information that is fairly reliable for the period that it covers, 1660–1713. The work, however, is somewhat voluminous, and teachers will probably find a sufficient number of extracts in the various collections referred to in this report.

CÆSAR, *Commentaries on the Gallic War*. See pp. 24: 50–51 above.

GEOFFREY CHAUCER, *Canterbury Tales*. (The editions are so numerous and accessible as not to require detailed notice.)—Chaucer (c. 1340–1400), the celebrated English poet of the fourteenth century, was “a gentleman, a courtier, and a man of affairs.” He was the “poet of the gentles” as distinguished from his contemporary Langland, the poet of the masses. He was in sympathy with the best life of the upper classes, and yet “he gives us no pictures in life higher than that of the Knight.” Chaucer knew the English people thoroughly; and, ignoring the sufferings of the people elaborated by Langland, he has painted a series of cheerful pictures which portray to the life the characteristic features of the various types of the people of his time. The *Canterbury Tales* will be found too difficult reading for many pupils; but for a class that is able to

take up this work there can be found no better or more interesting description of the life of the English people of the fourteenth century. The Prologue is especially serviceable for this purpose.

EARL OF CLARENDON, *History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars in England* (Various editions).—Edward Hyde, the first Earl of Clarendon (1608–1674), was an English statesman and historian of the seventeenth century, who wrote a history of the great rebellion with the evident intention of justifying the royalist party. This work expresses the honest conviction of the author; and, as giving the impressions of a royalist, it is a most valuable source for the period 1641–1660. G. D. Boyle, editor, *Characters and Episodes of the Great Rebellion, selected from Clarendon* (Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1889), presents in an attractive form a series of excellent selections from this history.

OLIVER CROMWELL, *Letters and Speeches* (edited by Thomas Carlyle, in various editions, any one of which will meet the requirements of class-room work).—Cromwell the Protector (1599–1658) was the great figure of the Puritan Revolution. Without entering into the much-vexed question of his character and motives, it is safe to say that there are few personages in English history who are so interesting in themselves, and whose lives afford us so excellent an insight into the temper and conditions of their times. Carlyle's edition of his *Letters and Speeches* is by no means a satisfactory piece of historical criticism and compilation—the evident bias, on the one hand, and the

## List of Available Sources 135

credulity with which the "Squire Papers" were accepted, on the other, are sufficient to condemn its scholarship—and yet this work can be used most successfully to rouse the interest of the pupils, and at the same time to acquaint them with the Puritan sentiment.

A new edition of *Cromwell's Speeches* (Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1901), edited by Charles L. Stainer has been published recently that, within its field, is much superior to Carlyle's edition in point of scholarship and criticism, and is to be preferred to the latter work.

JOHN EVELYN, *Diary*. New edition, 4 vols., Bohn's Historical Library (New York, Macmillan, 1879), also 1 vol. (New York, F. Warne & Co.).—Evelyn (1620–1706) was a typical country gentleman of the Restoration,—public-spirited, a pious member of the Church of England, a strong loyalist in spite of his disapproval of the morals of the court, and sufficiently wealthy to be able to keep out of active political life. He was a man of literary and scientific tastes, who wrote some thirty-five works on a great variety of subjects; but it is his *Diary* of the years 1641–1697 that has made him famous. His diary is not as interesting, and possibly not as valuable, as that of Pepys, but forms an excellent counterpart to that latter fascinating work, and "throws a strong light upon the customs and feelings of the age." The last two volumes are devoted to correspondence, largely that of Evelyn.

JEAN FROISSART, *Chronicles* (for the various editions see p. 70 above).—Froissart (1337–1410) was a Flemish priest and a celebrated chronicler, who traveled widely and was much more fond of court life and of self-enjoy-

ment than he was of performing the duties of his priestly office. His *Chronicles* cover the period of the first half of the Hundred Years' War (1326-1400). Except in the first part of his work, Froissart makes but little use of the writings of others, and yet his *Chronicles* are of no great historical value. He is, however, the most entertaining of the mediæval chroniclers. He was a born story-teller, and as a picturesque contemporary narrator of events, chiefly of battles and feats of arms, he is unsurpassed (see pp. 86-87 above).

GILDAS, *Works*. (Bohn's Antiquarian Library, New York, Macmillan.) (Edited by J. A. Giles, *Six Old English Chronicles*.)—Gildas is an author of whom very little is known. Indeed, it has been said of him that one cannot "speak with certainty as to his parentage, his country, or even his name, the period when he lived, or the works of which he was the author." It is, however, generally accepted that he was a British historian, probably a monk, who lived about the middle of the sixth century, and wrote a treatise, *De Excidio Britannia*, which owes its historical value, for the period extending from the early part of the fifth century to about 560 A. D., chiefly to the absence of better authorities. Owing to his erudition and wisdom, Alcuin refers to him as "the wisest of the Britons"; but his wisdom did not prevent him from writing a work that is singularly verbose and involved in style and that contains but few intelligible facts. He reminds one of Gratiano, with "his reasons as two grains of wheat hid in two bushels of chaff; you shall search all



## List of Available Sources 137

day ere you find them ; and when you have them they are not worth the search." Yet it must be remembered that Bede unhesitatingly adopted the latter portion of his work ; and consequently Gildas must be regarded as "the first native British historian," and his work as "the basis of early English history."

RICHARD HAKLUYT, *The Principall Navigations, Voyages, and Discoveries of the English Nation*. (Various editions.)—Hakluyt (1552-1616), an Englishman of good family of either Dutch or Welsh origin, at an early age turned his attention to geography and the history of discovery. He published a number of works upon these subjects, the most important of which was the *Principall Navigations*, which first appeared in 1589. Froude termed this collection "the prose epic of the modern English nation . . . an invaluable treasure of material for the history of geography, discovery and colonization." In E. J. Payne's *Voyages of Elizabethan Seamen to America* (2d edition, Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1893), will be found a well-edited series of selections from Hakluyt of the voyages of Hawkins, Frobisher, and Drake to America. Cassell's National Library (New York, 1886) also contains two volumes of selections from Hakluyt: *Voyages in Search of the North-West Passage*, including Frobisher's three voyages and three voyages of John Davis ; and *Voyagers' Tales*, including accounts by John Fox and Sanders of adventures with the Turks, by Philip Jones of a fight with Spain in 1586, by Hawkins of his own voyage to the West Indies in 1567-1568, and by Phillip of the adventures of those

whom Hawkins set on shore and of his own final escape to England. The second series of Payne's *Voyages of the Elizabethan Seamen to America* (Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1900), containing accounts of the voyages of Gilbert, Amadas, and Barlow, Cavendish, and Raleigh, is of the same high character as the First Series.

WILLIAM HARRISON, *A Description of England*. (London, Scott, and New York, Lovell, 1889. Camelot Series.) (Edited by Lothrop Withington, *Elizabethan England*.)—Harrison (1534-1593), "topographer, chronologer, and historian," was the chief of the co-workers of Holinshed, for whose *Chronicles* he wrote the *Description of England*. His valuable accounts of the people, their homes, their food, dress, manner of living, and their institutions, has made Harrison "one of the most often quoted and trusted authorities on the condition of England in Elizabeth's and Shakespeare's days." Withington's edition is a rearrangement of Harrison's material with some omissions.

WILLIAM LANGLAND, *Vision of Piers the Plowman*. (Translated by Kate M. Warren, 2d edition, revised. New York, Macmillan, 1899.)—Langland (c. 1330-1400) was an English poet of the fourteenth century, of whose life but little is definitely known. He was "not only a keen observer and thinker, but also an effective writer," and he has put into his *Vision* what he had to say upon the conditions and problems of the time. He has described many phases of the life about him as he saw it, but most effective is his picture of the life of the laborer and his protest against the oppression of the poor.

## List of Available Sources 139

SIR THOMAS MALORY, a knight of the fifteenth century, was the probable author of the *Morte d'Arthur*, a compendium of stories giving "in a rough chronological order the history of the life and times of Arthur, together with the chief exploits of his most famous knights." It is a fascinating romance, or series of romances, which reflect the ideals of chivalric life of the thirteenth century. Many editions of this work have been published, among which, for one reason or another, the following may be recommended: Lanier, *The Boy's King Arthur* (New York, Scribner); Rhys's edition in the Camelot Series (London, Scott, and New York, Lovell, 1887); Gollancz's edition in the Temple Classics (4 pts., New York, Macmillan, 1897) and Mead's edition in the Athenæum Press Series (Boston, Ginn, 1897).—See also pp. 88–89 above.

SIR THOMAS MORE (1478–1535), a statesman and chancellor of Henry VIII, and one of the victims of that monarch's despotic rule, was the representative of the "new learning" in England. Among other works, he was the author of the famous *Utopia* and a *History of Edward V*, commonly cited as *Life of Richard III*, references to which are very frequently made but which are scarcely fitted for school use; the former is rather beyond the capacity of the average pupil in our schools and the latter is too detailed in treatment, besides being somewhat broad in its description of the lives of several of the characters. These works, edited by Maurice Adams, are to be found in a convenient form in the Camelot series (London, Scott, and New York, Lovell, 1890).

*Paston Letters.* 4 vols. Westminster, Constable, 1900-1901. (Edited by James Gairdner).—These are papers and letters written mostly by or to members of the Paston family in Norfolk, during the fifteenth and early sixteenth centuries. They are a genuine storehouse of information for the social conditions at the time of the Wars of the Roses.

SAMUEL PEPYS, *Diary*. (Edited by Henry B. Wheatley. 9 vols. Bohn's Historical Library, New York, Macmillan, 1893-1899.) Pepys (1633-1703) was one of England's most distinguished officials in naval affairs, but his career as an official has been completely eclipsed by his fame as the writer of a diary covering the years 1660-1669. The diary was written in shorthand, and contains the daily record of the author's life for nearly ten years, with the frankest expression of his inmost thoughts and feelings. The decipherment and publication of the diary has thrown a new light upon the history and manners of the time, for the understanding of which it is of the greatest service. Because of its value and fascinating interest it will be found a most helpful supplement to the text-book. Wheatley's edition is the best, but being unexpurgated is hardly fitted for class-room work, for which Lord Braybrooke's edition (4 vols., Bohn's Historical Library, New York, Macmillan, also 1 vol. F. Warne & Co., and Cassell's National Library, 10 vols., New York, 1894-1900) is much better suited.

TACITUS, *Agricola and Germania*.—For an account of the author, see p. 54 above. Church and

## List of Available Sources 141

Brodrigg's translation of the *Agricola and Germania* (see p. 32 above) is the best, but the translation in Bohn's Classical Library may well be used. Lee's *Source-Book* contains important selections from an excellent translation of the *Agricola*; the University of Indiana, *Extracts from the Sources*, IX, contains the important chapters from Church and Brodrigg's translation of the *Germania*; and Arthur C. Howland, *The Early Germans* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. VI, No. 3), includes among other extracts an excellent translation of the *Germania*, in the preparation of which Church and Brodrigg's version has been freely used.

WILLIAM OF MALMESBURY, *Chronicles of the Kings of England*. Edited by J. A. Giles. (Bohn's Antiquarian Library, New York, Macmillan.)—William of Malmesbury (1095–1148), the son of a Norman father and an English mother,—thus representing the fusion of the two races, though his sympathies are evidently on the side of the Normans,—was the first writer after Bede who attempted to be something more than a mere annalist, and he is the first after him who is entitled to be ranked as a historian. "By the general consent of scholars, William of Malmesbury takes a foremost place among the authorities of the Anglo-Norman period," and "more information is to be gathered from him than from all of the writers who preceded him." His *History of the English Kings* is his most important work; it extends from the year 449 through the greater part of the reign of Henry I. The

first two books, bringing the history down to the Norman Conquest, contain little that is new ; but the last three books—from the year 1066—are particularly valuable in their illustrations of character, and from the fact that the last part of the work is that of a contemporary. In the *Modern History*, which is appended to the *History of the English Kings*, will be found an account of the accession and character of Stephen, with a description of the anarchy of his reign.

§ 49. References to the Sources of English History arranged by Periods.

The following references are to editions of which full titles will be found above, § 48.

§ 50. The Pre-Norman Period. 55 B. C.—  
1066 A. D.

Whatever may be one's opinion as to the lasting importance of the Roman occupation of Britain upon the later development of the English, the fact of the conquest cannot be overlooked, and the first invasion of the island by the Romans is of perennial interest. Cæsar's own account of this is, of course, the best; it is to be found in *Commentaries*, Book IV, chs. 20–36. His second invasion, together with a description of the island and its inhabitants, is recorded in Book V, chs. 8–23. If it is desired

to pursue this subject at greater length, a description of Britain and the Britons, with the characteristics and some facts of the Roman occupation, may be found in the *Agricola* of Tacitus, chs. 5, 10-24. (Many of these extracts will be found in the collections of Colby, Kendall, Lee, and Tremain.)

The withdrawal of the Romans, the ravages of the Picts and Scots, and "the groans of the Britons" in their appeal to the Romans for succor are described in Gildas, §§ 14-20, and in Bede, Book I, chs. xi-xiv. (The essential parts from Gildas will be found in Lee and Tremain.)

If the Anglo-Saxon invasion and conquest of Britain is to be rightly understood, it must be regarded simply as a part of that greater movement known in European history as the German Migrations; and as so much of the English institutional and constitutional life is a direct development of that of the early Germans, it is essential to understand the life and social organization of the primitive Germans. The one great authority for the life of the Germans in their own home is the *Germania* of Tacitus, and the parts of this work that are of especial importance are chs. 4-7, 11-18, 21-27. The story of Beowulf may be made very interesting to a class, and the pictures that it draws of the manners and customs of these robust warriors may be regarded as fairly typical of the coast-dwelling

Germans of the sixth century. (Dr. Lee, in his *Source-Book*, makes the mistake of taking his description of the early Germans from Cæsar, who is not to be compared with Tacitus as an authority. Sufficiently full extracts from Tacitus will be found in the series issued by the University of Indiana and the University of Pennsylvania, and shorter but good selections in Colby, Kendall, and Tremain.)

Both Bede and the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* fix the exact date of the coming of the Germans into Britain; and though scholars now very generally repudiate this preciseness and recognize that the settlement of the Angles, Saxons, and Jutes in the island was the result of a long series of incursions, of the details of which we are ignorant, the beginning of the German invasion is of sufficient importance to warrant calling attention to the accounts in Gildas, § 23; Bede, ch. xv; and the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, A. 449. (Colby, Kendall, and Lee all include the extract from Bede.)

The establishment of the various Anglo-Saxon kingdoms in Britain may be traced in the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, under the records of the years 449-547; while the struggles of these states among themselves and with the Britons are recorded in the *Chronicle* under the records of the two centuries and a half that follow. For the result of the struggle, in the final supremacy of the West-Saxons under



Ecgbert, the records of the years 823, 827, and 836 are the most important. Supplementary details of this struggle for supremacy and union may be taken from Bede. (Typical extracts from the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* will be found in Lee and in Tremain.)

Bede is the one great authority for the reestablishment of Christianity in Britain, and his account of the landing of St. Augustine and the conversion of Kent (Book I, chs. xxv-xxvi) should be read by all pupils. (This extract will be found in both Colby and Lee, and, with additional chapters, in *Old South Leaflets*, No. 113.) A very interesting study may be made of the conversion of the different English kingdoms, as recorded in Bede, Book II, chs. vi, ix, xii-xvi; Book III, chs. i, vii, xxi, xxii, xxiv, xxx; Book IV, chs. xiii, xvi. Book III, chs. iii-v, xxv, contains an account of the Scottish monks, the different practices which they observed, and the settlement of these differences in the all-important Synod of Whitby; while a brief notice of the coming of Archbishop Theodore and his work of organization is to be found in Book IV, ch. ii.

A very large portion of Bede's work is devoted to stories of legends and miracles; if it is desired to give some illustrations of these, selections may be made almost at random.

The Danish invasions are first noticed in the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* under the year 787; and

after the year 835 the records of the ravages of the Danes and of the struggles of Alfred and his successors with the invaders are practically continuous and full of interest down to the year 924. Asser's *Life of Alfred* cannot be too highly recommended for this period, as it is short and very interesting throughout. Almost any part of the *Life* may be chosen, but perhaps especially readable are the accounts of Alfred's boyhood, his struggle with the Danes, his accession to the throne, and his regard for things intellectual and religious. William of Malmesbury's *Chronicle* is not a contemporary account, but it may well be used in this connection,—for example,—Book II, ch. iv, on Alfred, and the first two pages of ch. viii on Edgar. (Fuller extracts than are given in any of the collections by Colby, Kendall, or Lee should be made for the events of this period.)

The second series of Danish invasions will be found recorded in the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* under the years 980, 982, 991, 994, 1002–1013. The records of 1014–1017 describe the struggle between Canute and Edmund Ironside, with the final establishment of Canute as sole king of all the English. In 1042 the old line was restored in the person of Edward the Confessor. William of Malmesbury has an interesting chapter on Canute (Book II, ch. xi), in which will be found the oft-

quoted letter of the king to his people (from Florence of Worcester's *Chronicle*); later (in the last five pages of ch. xiii) he explains the question of a successor to Edward the Confessor.

For the constitutional side of the pre-Norman period of English history, Lee's *Source-Book*, chs. v-vi, is the most convenient authority, containing extracts from the laws of Alfred, Athelstan, Edgar, and Canute. Kendall's *Source-Book* also contains a few good selections. Excellent illustrations of some of the methods of the old English legal procedure may be found in Arthur C. Howland, editor, *Ordeals, Compurgation, Excommunication and Interdict* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. IV, No. 4), note especially compurgation (§ i, Nos. 1-2) and ordeals (§ ii, Nos. 1-6); the rest of the documents in this pamphlet either are too technical or have no bearing upon English history.

### § 51. The Norman Period, 1066-1154.

William of Malmesbury is the best authority for the Norman period, and the following selections from his *History of the English Kings* are recommended as being both interesting and profitable:—Book III, Preface, and pages 260-261, 271-283, 300, 308-309, on the Norman Conquest and the

character of William the Conqueror; Book IV, 327-328, 334-341, 344-346, on the character of William Rufus, with 347-350 on the Cistercians; Book V, 425-429, 434-436, 442, 445-447 and 452-456, on the accession and reign of Henry I. In the *Modern History*, which forms a sort of appendix to the *History*, will be found an account of the accession and character of Stephen and of the anarchy of his reign (Book I, 491-495, Book II, 509-510). The records in the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* which are of the most importance for this period are: 1066, the Norman Conquest; 1070, the sack-ing of the monastery of Peterborough by a party of Danes; 1085, the Domesday survey; 1087, the death and character of the Conqueror; 1088-1094, a graphic account of characteristic events and conditions under William Rufus; 1135, the death and character of Henry I; 1137-1140, the anarchy of Stephen's reign. (Some of these selections, and several more from other sources, will be found in the collections of Colby, Kendall, and Lee.)

The writings of Ordericus Vitalis are somewhat too extensive to be generally recommended, but his *Ecclesiastical History of England and Normandy* (4 vols., Bohn's Antiquarian Library, New York, etc., Macmillan), is of great value upon the relation between those two countries after the Conquest. To those who desire to make a special study of

this period, or of the historical and social conditions of Normandy and England in the latter part of the eleventh and the first half of the twelfth centuries, this work will be found to be of the greatest service. (Lee makes extensive selections from Ordericus on the Norman Conquest.)

Two other chronicles may be mentioned, which are, however, of less value than that of Ordericus. One of these, Florence of Worcester's *Chronicle* (Bohn's Antiquarian Library, New York, Macmillan), is of some value for the latter part of the eleventh century and for the first fifteen years of the twelfth century. The other chronicle, that of Henry of Huntington (Bohn's Antiquarian Library, New York, Macmillan, 1853), is little more than a compilation, but it preserves ballads and traditions which would otherwise have been lost.

For the constitutional history of the Norman period, the University of Pennsylvania's *Translations and Reprints* afford the best extracts in the most convenient form. Certain of Cheyney's *Documents illustrative of Feudalism* (*Translations and Reprints*, Vol. IV, No. 3) can be put to good use in explaining the feudal system, which as a completed system is to be regarded as the work of the Conquest. For example, Part I, § i, Nos. 1-2, gives formulas of personal commendation; § ii, No. 1, is an early

formula for the giving up of land to a monastery and receiving it back in partial ownership ; and § iii, No. 2, affords a typical example of a grant of immunity. Part II, § ii, Nos. 1-3, describes the ceremony of homage and fealty and the legal rules for the same, while § iv, Nos. 1-2, explains the mutual duties of vassals and lords ; § v, Nos. 2-3, § vi, Nos. 1, 2, 4, and § vii, Nos. 1, 2, 5, 7, give good practical instances of feudal rights, aids, and obligations. Many of these last selections refer to continental institutions and practices, but they are applicable to English conditions. In his *English Constitutional Documents (Translations and Reprints, Vol. I, No. 6)*, the coronation oath of William the Conqueror (§ i, p. 2) and his charter to the city of London (§ ii, p. 4) may be noticed ; but by far the most important document is the charter of Henry I (§ ii, p. 4), which should be carefully studied for its own sake, especially as showing the relief that was necessary from the feudal exactions of the reign of William Rufus, and also because it was the forerunner of Magna Charta. (This charter is also to be found in Adams and Stephens, Colby, Hill, Kendall, and Lee. The explanatory extracts in Hill, and in Taswell-Langmead's *English Constitutional History*, ch. iii, are recommended for purposes of elucidation.)

If further selections are desired, Henderson's *Se-*

*lect Historical Documents* contains some "Statutes of William the Conqueror," of which Articles 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, show the strong government that William established, his protection of the Normans, and his intention to retain the old laws and customs; from the "Customs of Chester," in Cheyney's *English Towns and Gilds* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. II, No. 1), some extracts might be made to show how offences of all sorts could be compounded for money payments; and in Lee's *Source-Book* will be found illustrations of the completeness of the Domesday survey and of the independent attitude of William the Conqueror toward the Church of Rome, also Henry I's charter to London, and his compromise with Anselm on the investiture controversy which preceded by some fifteen years the famous Concordat of Worms on exactly similar lines.

Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, while in form a history of King Arthur and his famous knights, is a narrative which has no basis in reality but is rather a romance which "presents in a vivid light the ideals of what we somewhat vaguely call chivalry, and is steeped in the spirit of the great feudal society." Few books can be found which will interest a class so deeply as these fascinating stories; extracts which will give excellent pictures of mediæval life and manners may be taken almost at random.

## §52. Constitutional Development, 1154-1337

With the accession of Henry II begins a period, lasting until the outbreak of the Hundred Years' War, in which the constitutional development is the all-important feature of English history. The chroniclers of this period, Giraldus Cambrensis, Benedict of Peterborough, William of Newbury, Roger of Hoveden, Roger of Wendover, Matthew Paris, and William Rishanger, though all are of the greatest importance to the historian, contain but little—in proportion to the great length of their works—that is usable by pupils in our schools; and much of what is usable is to be found in the various collection of sources. For example, as important a record as any is Roger of Wendover's account of the winning of the Great Charter, the essential parts of which will be found in Colby, Hill, Kendall and Lee. (The works of all these chroniclers, except Benedict of Peterborough, William of Newbury and William Rishanger are to be found in Bohn's Antiquarian Library, in all 8 vols.)

Of the University of Pennsylvania's *Translations and Reprints*, Cheyney's *English Constitutional Documents* (Revised edition, 1897, Vol. I, No. 6) deals almost exclusively with this period. The coronation oaths of Henry III and Edward II (§ i, p. 3) are interesting; but the charter of Henry II



## Constitutional Development 153

(§, ii, p. 6) might well be omitted, as its chief importance consists in its being one of the connecting links between the charter of Henry I and the Great Charter. Of itself it contains little of importance. Magna Charta (§ ii, p. 7) is, of course, of primary interest and should be studied as carefully as the time and the ability of the class will permit. The first eight articles should be compared with Articles 1-5, 7 of the charter of Henry I; and the first article of the Confirmation of the Charters (§ ii, p. 17) might also be read in this connection. It will probably be sufficient here to call attention to the constitutional provisions in the Great Charter (Articles 12, 14-17, 20-22, 36, 39, 40), and to Articles 5-7 in the Confirmation of the Charters. Whether any use is to be made of the judicial documents in the second division of this pamphlet (*English Constitutional Documents*) depends upon how much stress has been laid, in the class, upon judicial organization and procedure. Nos. 1, 2, 3, afford interesting illustrations of methods of judicial procedure. The Assize of Clarendon (No. 5), Articles 1, 2, 4, 12-14, deal with the establishment of the grand jury and its method of working in harmony with the local courts; Articles 4-11 give the royal judges exclusive jurisdiction, to the detriment of the franchise courts, and Articles 15, 16, 20, might be noticed for their general interest.

The Constitutions of Clarendon (No. 6) are of equal importance as showing the attitude of independence of Rome taken by Henry II (Articles 4, 7, 8) and his determination to make the royal courts superior to the ecclesiastical (Articles 1, 3, 6, 9-13, 15); while Article 16 is of general interest. Nos. 7-8 afford very interesting practical examples of judicial cases.

Adams and Stephens' *Select Documents*, Lee's *Source-Book* and Henderson's *Select Historical Documents* contain the Constitutions and Assize of Clarendon and Magna Charta. In addition, Adams and Stephens, and Lee include a number of documents of constitutional importance, some of which—such as the legislative enactments of Edward I—may prove to be too difficult for school use, but others will prove to be very serviceable. In Henderson, the Second Book of the "Dialogue Concerning the Exchequer" is too technical and dry, but from the First Book the following selections may well be taken: As to the name of the "Exchequer" (§ i); what Scutage and Murdrum are and why they are so called (§§ ix-x); Dane-geld (§ xi, first part); the Forest (§ xii); what Domesday Book is and for what purpose it was composed (§ xvi). Further, the "Laws of Richard I concerning Crusaders" is a short and very interesting extract; and "the Manner of Holding Par-

## Constitutional Development 155

liament," though pretending to describe parliament in the time of William the Conqueror, is in reality an ideal description of parliament in the fourteenth century. If emphasis has been laid in the class upon the constitutional side and especially upon parliamentary growth and organization, this document will prove invaluable for purposes of illustration.

Cheyney's *English Manorial Documents* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. III, No. 5) is to be strongly recommended to the teacher who wishes to understand the manorial system, although it contains little or nothing that can be used to advantage by the class. If any stress is to be laid upon the chartering of towns and the organization of guilds, selections illustrative of these subjects may well be taken from Cheyney's *English Towns and Gilds* (*Ibid.*, Vol. II, No. 1). Henry II's charter to Wallingford, for example, is a good illustration of the sort of grants that were made to towns; and in the "Ordinances" of the Gild Merchant of Southampton, of the Holy Trinity of Lynn Regis, and of the Craft Gilds, will be found many intensely interesting and instructive provisions explanatory of the customs of such organizations.

Hill's *Liberty Documents*, chs. iii-iv, contains a "Summons to Parliament" of 1295, and the "Confirmation of the Charters" of 1297. With the

critical comments that accompany them, this is quite the best presentation of these documents. It is to be regretted, however, that for the sake of the teacher the distinction between the French and the Latin texts of the *Confirmatio chartarum* is not brought out more clearly; further reading in Stubbs and Taswell-Langmead is, therefore, advisable.

Although not strictly in keeping with the chronological divisions of this report, it might be well at this point to call attention to a most excellent chapter in Hill's *Liberty Documents* upon "Legal Forms and Jury Trials" (ch. v), and to urge every teacher to make use of these selections in connection with others, at some time in the course, in order to bring clearly before the class the very great importance, in the development of the English constitution, of the early organization of the judiciary (preceding the establishment of a parliament) and the growth of trial by jury, with the influence of these institutions upon the English character as evidenced in the Anglo-Saxon respect for law. The mere fact that the first parliaments were nothing more or less than great national juries is a sufficient indication of the importance of this phase of the English development.

For certain aspects of the history of this period other than constitutional, the series of little books, *English History from Contemporary Writers*, is

## The 14th and 15th Centuries 157

most excellent. *The Jews of Angevin England* contains a large amount of hitherto inaccessible and very interesting material illustrative of the treatment of this long-suffering race, from the time of their arrival in England to the year 1206. (Selections from this book are to be found in the University of Nebraska, *Studies in European History*, Vol. II, No. 7.) *St. Thomas of Canterbury* and *Strongbow's Conquest of Ireland*, as their titles imply, treat of important events in the reign of Henry II. The reign of Richard I belongs rather to European history than to the story of England; but if it is desired to take up his part in the crusades, *The Crusade of Richard I* will be found to contain a large number of extracts from writers who were either contemporary or of the next generation. *The Misrule of Henry III* covers the period of the "growth of opposition to royal misgovernment and papal interference," that is, down to the year 1251.

### § 53. The Fourteenth and Fifteenth Centuries.

The fourteenth and fifteenth centuries of English history are a period of almost continuous warfare. Although the social changes which took place during this time are very significant, they do not form so conspicuous or important a feature as the wars which

were carried on with France, or as the civil wars between the houses of York and Lancaster. The work in the text-book upon the Hundred Years' War and the Wars of the Roses may well be supplemented by selections from Froissart, whose accounts of the battles of Crécy and Poitiers and of the surrender of Calais will be found intensely interesting; and by parts of two volumes in the series of *English History from Contemporary Writers*,—namely, Ashley's *Edward III and his Wars* and Thompson's *Wars of York and Lancaster* (short extracts from these will be found in Colby and Kendall).

For the social side of this period, Langland's *Vision of Piers the Plowman* may be recommended. Passus V, though somewhat coarse in the confession of the Seven Deadly Sins, is the "general confession of England in the time of the Plantagenets"; in addition to this, the Prologue and Passus VI should be read for their exact and realistic pictures of certain phases of English life of the fourteenth century. In Ashley's *Edward III and his Wars* will also be found a few interesting accounts of the universities and of university life. Selections from Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales*—such as the Prologue, the story of the Jews and the child in the Prioress' Tale, and the Man of Lawes' Tale—have been successfully used in many of our secondary schools. The *Paston Letters* give a series of realistic pictures

## The 14th and 15th Centuries 159

of the life of the fifteenth century, but it is questionable whether they can be used to any great extent by the average pupil. (Brief extracts from the *Paston Letters* will be found in Colby, in Kendall, and in Thompson's *Wars of York and Lancaster*.)

Both Kendall and Lee include in their collections excellent accounts of the Black Death, by Knighton, taken from Ashley's *Edward III and his Wars*. In connection with this should be read Froissart's story of Wat Tyler's Rebellion, which will be found in Colby and Kendall. In this account of the peasants' revolt, it must be remembered that although Froissart puts "the opposite case very fairly," he is writing from the standpoint of the aristocrat, and that its resemblance to the Jacquerie in France is not so close as he would make it.

The more important constitutional documents will be found in Adams and Stephens' *Select Documents*, and some of them in Lee's *Source-Book* and in Cheyney's *England in the Time of Wycliffe* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, Vol. II, No. 5); but most of them, though interesting and valuable for the teacher, are too technical for the average pupil.

If it is desired to make a more extended study of Wyclif and Lollardy, an excellent series of selections will be found in Lee's *Source-Book*.

## § 54. The Reformation in England.

The changes in church government which were introduced by Henry VIII and which developed into what is termed the "Reformation" in England, are the most important feature of the reigns of the Tudors, and mark, of course, an epoch in English history; but the documents bearing upon these changes are so detailed and technical that they must, for the most part, be taken at second hand by the class. Adams and Stephens' *Select Documents*, Lee's *Source-Book*, Gee and Hardy's *Documents illustrative of English Church History* (New York, Macmillan, 1896), and Johnston's *English Historical Reprints: The Relations between Church and State* (two pamphlets published by Sheehan, Ann Arbor) may be consulted for all of the more important documents. It is quite possible to make available selections from these, but the extent to which this is done must rest with the individual teacher, and will depend upon the character and the work of the class.

A little usable material may be found in Cheyney's *Early Reformation Period in England* (University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, 3d edition, Vol. I, No. 1). The Venetian ambassadors' descriptions of Henry VIII and Cardinal Wolsey (i, 1-3) are very interesting, and it might be



## The Reformation in England 161

well to show the class one of Holbein's portraits of Henry VIII, such as may be found in Gardiner's *Student's History*, so as to bring out the fact that our modern ideas of manly beauty do not necessarily correspond with those of the sixteenth century. It is rather difficult to see wherein lies the particular value of the five letters between Henry, Anne Boleyn, and Wolsey (ii, 1-4) which follow, but it is possible that some teachers will find them useful. The excellent description by Erasmus of Sir Thomas More (iii) is rather long, and to take it up in a school course might be laying too much emphasis upon this character; but More's letter descriptive of his own life (iv) is excellent, and is not open to the objection of too great length. The first and the last of the "Extracts from Roper's Life of More" (v) might well be taken, as showing the arbitrary power of Henry VIII in the opinion of one who knew him intimately, and the high esteem in which More was held by his contemporaries. The rest of the selections in this pamphlet are either too technical or of too little interest for school use.

For a description of Scotland at the close of the fifteenth century, Smith's *Days of James IV* (*Scottish History from Contemporary Writers*, No. 1) will be found very helpful.

## § 55. Elizabeth and James I, 1558-1625.

For the constitutional side of English history from 1558 to 1625—that is, from the accession of Elizabeth to the end of the reign of James I—Prothero's *Statutes and Constitutional Documents* is a very valuable collection for teachers and advanced students. Much of this will be found to be too technical and difficult for the fullest use in the average school, yet selections which will prove most serviceable may be made from it upon such subjects as have been treated in the class. As examples of these, the following documents are suggested: Statutes 5 Eliz. cap. iii, 14 Eliz. cap. v, 18 Eliz. cap. iii, 39 and 40 Eliz. cap. iv, and 1 Jac. I, cap. vii, upon the treatment of the poor and the punishment of rogues and vagabonds; 8 Eliz. cap. iv, and 1 Jac. I, cap. viii, on taking away the benefit of the clergy from certain offences; 13 Eliz. cap. i, on treason; the petitions of the House of Commons for Elizabeth's marriage in 1563, and in regard to Mary Queen of Scots in 1586, with Elizabeth's replies thereto (pp. 107-111); extracts from Sir Thomas Smith's *Commonwealth of England*, on the "Classes of the People," and on "Parliament and the Sovereign" (pp. 176-181); Elizabeth's speech in Parliament in 1585 on religious matters (pp. 221-222); extracts from the political writings

of James I, Sir Walter Raleigh, Dr. Cowell, and John Selden (pp. 399-400, 409-412), and also from James I's speech in Parliament in 1610 (pp. 293-295) to show the attitude of the crown and its supporters upon the questions of royal prerogative and divine right; the "Apology" of the House of Commons in 1604 (pp. 286-293), to bring out the growing independence of that body. The statute 43 and 44 Eliz. cap. xviii, granting supplies in 1601, testifies as nothing else can to the affection and confidence which the people had for their queen. If this is taken in connection with the queen's reply to the thanks of the Commons for her action on monopolies in the same year (not given in Prothero, but the substance of it can be found in almost any history of England, or at length in Colby, *Selections from the Sources*, 159-162), the two will form the most remarkable proof of thorough understanding and good-will between crown and subjects that any reign in any land can show.

Some twenty of the most important documents of these two reigns are to be found in Adams and Stephens' *Select Documents*. They are, however, for teacher's rather than for student's use.

Before leaving the constitutional aspect of this period, it might be well to call attention to the trial of Sir Walter Raleigh, in Stephen's *State Trials*, which is of interest not only from the personal and

the historical points of view, but also constitutionally as showing the methods by which an important trial was conducted at the beginning of the seventeenth century.

Harrison's *Description of England* is the original book from which most of the modern descriptions of Elizabethan England have been drawn, too often without due acknowledgment,—descriptions of the classes of the people, of their food, dress, houses, laws and punishments, treatment of the poor, churches, etc. Selections may be made almost at random from the chapters on such of these subjects as bear upon the work of the class. Brief extracts appear in Hart, *American History told by Contemporaries*, I, No. 44.

The stirring tales of adventure and exploration of the seamen of the sixteenth century must always appeal to both young and old, and we are fortunate in possessing Hakluyt's unrivalled collection of these voyages. For arousing interest in a field, the investigation of which generally requires but little stimulus, no teacher can do better than to have the class read some selections from this collection. All of Payne's two small volumes (*Voyages of Elizabethan Seamen*) may well be used, or any parts of them may be chosen. The selections in the volumes of Cassell's National Library are not to be compared with the carefully-edited selections of

Payne ; but they have the advantages of cheapness, greater number and variety, and they may well be made use of in school classes. In connection with these voyages from Hakluyt, should be noticed Sir Walter Raleigh's *The Last Fight of the Revenge at Sea* (Arber's *English Reprints*, No. 29, New York, Macmillan, 1871), the story of one of the most gallant fights in naval annals. (An extract from Raleigh is given in Colby.) The story of the defeat of the Spanish Armada is told more or less at length in Henderson, Kendall, and Lee. Four well-chosen selections from Hakluyt are included in Lee's *Source-Book*, and several short extracts relating to America in Hart, *American History told by Contemporaries*, I, Nos. 28, 40. Several selections referring to the voyages of the Cabots are in *Old South Leaflets*, No. 37, and in Hart and Channing, *American History Leaflets*, No. 9.)

For the social side of this period, and especially for the personality of many of the more important characters, Henderson's *Side-Lights on English History* is far and away the best book that can be used. Kendall's *Source-Book* should also be recommended, and some few selections bearing upon this feature will be found in Colby and Lee. Hart, in his *American History told by Contemporaries*, I, Part iii, and in his *Source-Book*, Ch. ii, includes certain extracts upon the condition of England, in order to show the

reasons for the colonization of America. Rait's *Mary Queen of Scots* (*Scottish History from Contemporary Writers*, No. 2) will furnish material for more detailed study, if it is desired to interest the class in the romantic story of the unfortunate Mary Stuart.

### §56. The Puritan Revolution, 1625-1660.

With the accession of Charles I, as we come to the final breach between king and parliament, our interest in the constitutional development increases, and we are fortunate in having in Gardiner, *Constitutional Documents of the Puritan Revolution*, an incomparable work for the study of this period. Some of the selections are so technical that they are not to be recommended, but many of the documents are of the greatest importance. The first of these is the Petition of Right (No. 10), commonly regarded as too technical or too difficult to be taken up by the class; but, like Magna Charta, it is so important that it is very desirable that some selections should be made,—such as paragraphs 3-5, or 6, or 7-8, 10,—in order that an idea, at least, of its general content may be gained. As is well known, the English declarations of rights, although couched in general terms, invariably apply to existing conditions, and have reference always to immediate con-

crete abuses of those rights: hence, a teacher can make excellent use of such a document as the Petition of Right by assigning specific statements and asking the class to gather facts in support of them. The Protestation of 1629 (No. 15) is of interest as being the occasion on which the king was approaching to break open the door of the House of Commons and the Speaker was held in the chair until the protest could be adopted. What has just been said regarding the Petition of Right applies equally as well to the Grand Remonstrance of 1641 (No. 43), which is to be regarded as a sort of party platform, an "appeal to the people" in justification of the course which the House of Commons was taking. Of the specific clauses of the Remonstrance, §§ 1, 7, 11, 12, 20, 27, 37, 38, 48, 52-55, 104-129, 136, 149-153, may be noted as of especial interest or importance. Upon religious questions, the Declaration of Sports (No. 17) will be found interesting; and, if desired, the Resolutions of the House of Commons (No. 39), the Order of the House of Lords (No. 40), and the Proclamation of the King (No. 44) may be taken to indicate the attitude of each class and their divergent tendencies in religious matters. The documents on the trial and sentence of the king (Nos. 80, 82-85), and the acts abolishing the monarchy and establishing the commonwealth (Nos. 88-91), are of prime interest

and can readily be used. The writs of ship-money, with the arguments upon their legality (Nos. 19-22), the impeachment of the five members (No. 46), the Solemn League and Covenant (No. 58), the Self-denying Ordinance (No. 63), the Heads of Proposals (No. 71) and the Agreement of the People (No. 74), are all important, but they are to be recommended to the teacher rather than to the scholar, being somewhat too abstruse for the latter. Many of the above documents will be found in Adams and Stephens' *Select Documents* and some of them in Lee's *Source-Book*, the *Old South Leaflets*, and Hill's *Liberty Documents*; while a much better idea of the trial of Charles I than could possibly be obtained from these few documents in Gardiner can be gained from the account in Stephen's *State Trials*. The character and principles of the English Puritan are set forth in extracts in Hart, *American History told by Contemporaries*, I, Chs. vii, viii, xiv, xv, xxi; and *Source Book*, Nos. 8, 10, 14, 15, 28, 29.

If it is remembered that Clarendon wrote his *History of the Rebellion* with evident bias, and with the intention of justifying the royalist party, few contemporary narratives will prove more interesting and valuable. His character sketches form the most readable and useful parts of his *History*; and from these, Boyle, *Characters and Episodes selected*



*from Clarendon*, gives us a series of good selections in a very convenient and attractive form, of which the following may be particularly recommended: the Duke of Buckingham; Archbishop Laud; Sir Harry Vane; the Earl of Strafford, his Trial, and his Execution; the Grand Remonstrance; Lord Digby; Arrest of the Five Members; Battle of Edge Hill; John Hampden; Lord Falkland; the Usage and the Character of Charles I; Death of Montrose; Cromwell, his Coronation, and his Death; Ben Jonson and John Selden; the Stuart Family.

The opposite side of the case is very strongly presented in Carlyle's *Letters and Speeches of Cromwell*, a work which can be recommended only with many reservations. Carlyle was lacking in many of the qualities of modern historical scholarship; and aside from accepting documents the authenticity of which is decidedly questionable, he made his compilation with the express purpose of magnifying the character of the Protector. If the work is used with caution, however, interesting selections can very easily be taken which will illustrate the Puritan spirit and serve to offset the sketches of Clarendon. Stainer's edition of *Cromwell's Speeches* may be used without these qualifications.

A number of excellent extracts upon this period will be found in Kendall's *Source-Book*; but the

collection which is most helpful in supplementing the work upon the constitutional features of this epoch is Henderson's *Side-Lights*. The way in which Mr. Henderson has succeeded in investing with real life and interest, not only the persons but the events, and even the debates in Parliament is most admirable. Smith's *Foreign Visitors in England* will also be found very useful in depicting the English national life, especially that of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries.

#### § 57. From the Restoration to the Revolution, 1660-1689.

A vivid and intensely interesting picture of the social life and manners of the Restoration may be gained from Pepys' *Diary*. The very beginning of the *Diary* attracts one with its account of the re-establishment of the Long Parliament by Monk, and its incidental picture of the life of the time (1660, Jan. 1-Mar. 16); and the reader passes on, with curiosity aroused, to the account of the Restoration of Charles II (April 26-May 25), with the interesting side-sketch of the bestowal of the Order of the Garter (May 27), and thence to the description of the coronation ceremonies (1661, April 22-23). A little later we become quite excited over the encounter between the French and Spanish am-

## Restoration to the Revolution 171

bassadors in their struggle for precedence (Sept. 30—Oct. 4); and it is interesting, if not amusing, to see how quickly Pepys enlists our sympathies for the Spanish. These references to Pepys can very well be supplemented by selections from Evelyn's *Diary*, though probably for the average pupil a sufficient number of extracts will be found in Henderson, which again presents us with the very best descriptions of the life and events in the reign of Charles II. (Brief extracts from Pepys and from other sources, though not so satisfactory as those quoted above, will be found in Colby, Kendall, and Taylor's *England under Charles II* (*English History from Contemporary Writings*).

The "Trial of the Regicides" as given by Stephen, with the contemporary comments from Pepys and Evelyn to be found in Henderson, shows most conclusively the change that had come over English opinion with regard to the monarchy.

Pepys's account of the Plague in London in 1665 is extremely interesting and also of great value. It begins in the *Diary* on May 24 and continues in the entries of June 7, 10, 15, 20, 21, 26 and 29. From July 1 there are almost daily references to its increase and extent until the end of September, after which it begins to decrease and by the end of the year has practically disappeared. His account of the Great Fire of the following year is of equal

interest and importance. It is found under the dates September 2-7, 15, 1666; but Pepys notices six months later (March 16, 1667) that it has not been fully extinguished even then. Further selections can be made from the *Diary*, if desired, but the facts that have been noted are by far the most important.

After obtaining some idea of the life and conditions of the Restoration, it is well to turn and trace the succession of events—partly political, partly religious—that led up to the Revolution. For this purpose we may well make use of the various collections that have been so often referred to: Colby contains practically nothing; a few good extracts, though rather disconnected, will be found in Taylor's *England under Charles II* (*English History from Contemporary Writers*); in Stephen's *State Trials*, the trial of Lord Russell marks the height of Charles II's power, and the trial of Alice Lisle is valuable as showing the arbitrary over-riding of justice by Lord Chief Justice Jeffreys; the best books are Henderson's and Kendall's, which, taken with the documents in Adams and Stephens, and Lee, show the development of the Revolution very clearly. Bishop Burnet's *History of My Own Time*, though a valuable source for this period, has not been quoted for two reasons. First, because the work is rather voluminous for the comparatively

## Restoration to the Revolution 173

small amount of it that can be used by the class; and, in the second place, because many of the best parts are included in the different collections of sources. Miss Hill, for example, cites Burnet's very amusing story of the way in which the Habeas Corpus Act was passed in the House of Lords.

The Habeas Corpus Act has been rather difficult of access but is now printed in full in Adams and Stephens' *Select Documents*, Lee's *Source-Book*, and Hill's *Liberty Documents*.

The text of the all-important Bill of Rights will be found in Adams and Stephens' *Select Documents*, in Lee's *Source-Book*, Taswell-Langmead's *English Constitutional History*, in *Old South Leaflets*, No. 19, and in Hill's *Liberty Documents*. As has been suggested with regard to some of the earlier documents, however technical and difficult of understanding the Bill of Rights may be, it is extremely desirable that the class should gain some conception of its content and object. For this purpose it is recommended that certain articles of the "Declaration," such as Nos. 1, 2, 6, 8 or 10, be taken, and that the class be asked to gather instances of the breaches of those rights in the recent reigns.

### § 58. The Eighteenth and Nineteenth Centuries.

As England changes into Great Britain, and then into the United Kingdom, and finally becomes a vast colonial empire—with the constitutional development that accompanied that expansion it is no longer a question whether sources can be found for her history in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries: it is rather a problem which sources shall be chosen. Political reforms have been brought about, a general advance in civilization has taken place, with tremendous changes in the economic and industrial world, in short, life has grown complex in the last two hundred years. The source material is so voluminous that the problem of choice is a very difficult one, and it is further complicated by the personal preferences and interest of both teachers and students. So much must depend upon the line of work that is being followed by the class that it seems impossible to suggest detailed selections from the sources, as has been done for the earlier periods. It is hoped that the work which has been done upon the earlier history will suggest to each teacher the lines to follow in gathering material for the study of this recent history. The collections of sources by Adams and Stephens, Colby, Henderson, Kendall, and Lee

## The 18th and 19th Centuries 175

have been so frequently referred to, that it is felt that the teacher must already be well aware of the merits and the defects of these different source-books, and that they may therefore be readily and intelligently used without further criticism. If they serve no other purpose for this period, they will at least point out material which may be used; and from the extracts which they give, some sort of an idea may be gained of the nature of the work from which the extracts are made. It will rest with each teacher to decide whether further extracts can be used to advantage.

One other class of collections of sources, which has not been available for the earlier period, should be noticed; this is the series of collections of orations. There has been so much discussion as to whether Burke's *Speech on Conciliation with America* can profitably be used in our schools, and whether it ought, therefore, to be required for entrance to college, that one hesitates to recommend sources of a similar nature; but the great political orations contain so much that is good literature and also good history, that it seems well to call the attention of the teacher who can make use of this kind of sources to three collections—Adams and Alden's *Representative British Orations*, 4 vols., Clarke's *Political Orations*, and Wagner's *Modern Political Orations*. The first three volumes of the first-

named collection, edited by Adams, contain sixteen orations between 1628 and 1879, and Clarke's collection contains ten between 1576 and 1831. As only three orations are to be found in both—Burke on "Conciliation with America," Fox on Bonaparte's "Overtures for Peace," and Macaulay on "Parliamentary Reform"—these three orations may be regarded as, by a sort of common consent, of particular importance. Each collection includes speeches of Chatham, Pitt, and Erskine, of which it may be said that the selections by Adams and Alden are the best, at least as far as our purpose is concerned, being in general better chosen and better edited. The fourth volume of *Representative British Orations*, edited by Alden, includes six orations between 1813 and 1898, while Wagner includes twenty-four between 1838 and 1888, and none of the selections are duplicated in the two collections. Of the two works, Wagner contains more material, but Alden's selections and editing are much better.

Although the use of maps to supplement the text-book cannot in any sense be regarded as work in the sources, it is so essential in any study of history that it seems well to call attention to Gardiner's *School Atlas of English History* (New edition, New York, Longman, 1898). It is hard to speak in too great praise of this book, which is of convenient size, of excellent arrangement, and is indispensable for any class in English history.



## Part V.

### American History.

#### § 59. Selection and Bibliography.

IN addition to the collection of extracts and documents enumerated below, it may be serviceable to give a brief description of some representative works which may serve as an introduction to the use of the sources. Detailed lists and descriptions of some of the sources suitable for schools will be found in J. N. Larned, *Literature of American History, a Bibliographical Guide*; in Hart, *Source-Book*, pp. xx-xxiii; and in Hart, *American History told by Contemporaries* (I, §§ 3-6; II, §§ 3-6; III, §§ 5-8; IV, §§ 4-6). In all three publications brief critical comments set forth the nature and scope of the sources mentioned.

The footnotes of the best secondary books will often direct to sources illustrating specific questions. On the colonial period, Edward Eggleston's *Beginners of a Nation* and *The Transit of Civilization* are especially useful for their treatment of original writers. Doyle, *English in America*, is the latest

comprehensive work on colonial history, founded on sources. John Fiske and Parkman frequently refer to their authorities. For the federal period of the United States, there are valuable footnotes in Bancroft's *History of the Constitution* (2 vol. edition), and in the histories of McMaster, Schouler, Von Holst, and Rhodes. On the reconstruction period, the most available guide will be found in the notes to W. A. Dunning, *Essays on the Civil War and Reconstruction* (New York, Macmillan, 1898). Beyond that point the source material is as yet little organized. W. E. Foster, *References to the History of Presidential Administrations* is helpful from 1789 to about 1885.

In regard to travels, the attention of the teacher may be called to the list in Channing and Hart, *Guide to the Study of American History* (Boston, Ginn), § 24; and to H. T. Tuckerman, *America and her Commentators* (New York, Scribner, 1864). The latter is an interesting and very useful literary history of narratives of travel in the United States; less accessible narratives are liberally set forth in extracts, others are summarized with comment. For contemporary estimates of travels, consult Al-libone's *Dictionary of Authors*, 5 vols. (Philadelphia, Lippincott, 1858-1891).

## § 60. Collections of Sources in American History.

The list is divided into two parts : (a) Collections for Class Use ; (b) Collections for General Reference.

## § 61. Collections of the Sources for Class Use.

HERMAN V. AMES, editor, *State Documents on Federal Relations : the States and the United States*. (University of Pennsylvania, Department of History. Sold by Longmans, Green & Co., New York.)—This series of which three numbers are published, illustrate the official action of the states in the most noted cases of conflict between the authority of the federal government and that of the states. Few documents of this class have hitherto been easily accessible outside of the great collections. Each extract is prefixed by a brief critical introduction and ample references for further study.

M. G. BRUMBAUGH, and J. S. WALTON, editors, *Liberty Bell Leaflets : Translations and Reprints of Original Historical Documents*. Nos. 1-4. (Philadelphia, Christopher Sower Co., 1900.)—A series containing documents and contemporary descriptions and political discussions illustrative of the establishment and growth mainly of the proprietary colonies which later became the Middle States. The development of the county-township system of local government will receive attention in this series.

H. W. CALDWELL, editor, *American History Studies*. (3 vols. Chicago, Ainsworth, 1897-1900.) Vol. I, *A Survey of American History*,—Vol. II, *Some American Legislators*,—Vol. III, *Territorial Development,—Expansion*.—These volumes each contain ten studies, which may also be obtained in leaflet form. Unlike the two series just mentioned, each of these leaflets is devoted to a subject, and contains brief citations illustrative of that subject from all kinds of sources. The editor has supplied brief introductory comments and lists of suggestive questions. Vol. II is designed for biographical study.

ALBERT BUSHNELL HART, editor, *American History told by Contemporaries*. (4 vols. New York, Macmillan, 1897-1901.)—Vol. I, *Era of Colonization*, 1492-1689,—Vol. II, *Building of the Republic*, 1689-1783,—Vol. III, *National Expansion*, 1783-1845,—Vol. IV, *Welding of the Nation*, 1845-1900.—This collection embraces specimens of all classes of sources described in this list except constitutional documents. It is provided with an introduction on the use of sources and with a bibliography of sources. Serviceable both for topical work and for illustrative reading.

ALBERT BUSHNELL HART, editor, *Source-Book of American History*. (New York, Macmillan, 1899.)—Designed for younger readers, and equipped for that purpose with marginal notes. An ample introduction provides suggestions as to its use in class work, with lists of topics and additional information in regard to sources.

## Sources for Class Use 181

ALBERT BUSHNELL HART and EDWARD CHANNING, editors, *American History Leaflets*. (34 nos. New York, Lovell, 1892-1902.)—Mainly constitutional and political documents. Especially serviceable for a study of the formation of the Union, the interpretation of the Constitution, the foreign relations of the United States, and the territorial growth of the country. Furnished with critical introductions. Several of these leaflets contain material not easily accessible elsewhere. (Through the error of the printer or the copyist, the text of pp. 16-17 of No. 14 is badly confused.)

THOMAS WENTWORTH HIGGINSON, *Young Folks' Book of American Explorers*. (New York, Longmans.)—Extracts from the personal narratives of the discoverers and explorers of America, or from the accounts of their contemporaries. Includes the most important voyages from the time of Columbus to the Pilgrim Fathers. Admirable for outside reading.

MABEL HILL, *Liberty Documents, with Contemporary Exposition and Critical Comment drawn from Various Writers*. (New York, Longmans, 1901.)—The most noted documents in the development of English and American civil liberty, accompanied by copious extracts from the comments on these documents by contemporary writers and by later historians.

ALEXANDER JOHNSTON, editor, *Representative American Orations*. (3 vols. New York, Putnam, 1884.)—New edition, with additions and notes, by James Albert Woodburn, *American Orations* (4 vols., 1896-1897).—The most convenient selection of public

speeches discussing the great political questions as they arose. The longer speeches are not given complete. In the new edition one spurious speech is included, that attributed to Samuel Adams.

WILLIAM MACDONALD, editor, *Select Charters and other Documents illustrative of American History, 1606-1775*. (New York, Macmillan, 1899.)—This excellent collection provides the material for studying the founding of the colonies and the causes of the Revolution in the colonial grants and charters, the acts of Parliament, and the most important of the public papers of the colonial assemblies and of the early congresses. Each document is provided with a brief critical introduction, and in the main the full text of the documents is given.

WILLIAM MACDONALD, editor, *Select Documents illustrative of the History of the United States, 1776-1861*. (New York, Macmillan, 1898.)—The fullest and best collection in a single volume for this period. The papers included illustrate all of the great constitutional and most of the important political questions. Jackson's administration receives especially detailed attention. Critical introductions precede the extracts. A third volume, William MacDonald, *Select Statutes and Other Documents Illustrative of the History of the United States, 1861-1898*, is in preparation.

WILLIAM H. MACE, *A Working Manual of American History for Teachers and Students*. (Syracuse, C. W. Bardeen, 1895.)—The last 175 pages of this book are devoted to extracts from the sources illustrating typical

## Sources of General Reference 183

incidents in the history of the country from the planting of the English colonies.

EDWIN DOAK MEAD, editor, *Old South Leaflets*. (Boston, Directors of the Old South Work, 1883-1901.)—125 numbers, of which three-quarters are directly on American history. The first 100 numbers are gathered into 4 vols. The discoveries and colonial and slavery questions are most fully illustrated. The extracts are shorter than those in the *American History Leaflets*; although some of the material in both series is the same, most of the contents are different.

HOWARD W. PRESTON, editor, *Documents illustrative of American History*, 1606-1863. (New York, Putnam, 1886.)—About half of this volume is devoted to the colonial charters, and the rest is equally allotted to documents of the Revolution and of the national period. With each document the editor has supplied an introduction and a brief list of references to the important secondary authorities, but he has neglected to indicate the sources of his texts.

### §62. Collections of Sources for General Reference.

*American Annual Cyclopædia*. (New York, Appletons, annual volume for every year from 1861.)—This invaluable collection contains much official material, Presidents' messages, debates in Congress, diplomatic correspondence, etc.

EDWARD ARBER, *The Story of the Pilgrim Fathers, as told by Themselves, their Friends, and their Enemies*, 1606-1623. (Boston, Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1897.)—Selections from contemporary narratives like those of Bradford and Winslow, from the records in the English *State Papers*, the Dutch city records, etc., illustrating every phase of Pilgrim history down to 1624.

GEORGE BANCROFT, *History of the Formation of the Constitution of the United States of America*. (2 vols. New York, Appleton, 1882.)—This original edition of the part of Bancroft's *History* dealing with the formation and adoption of the Constitution contains in appendices a large mass of public and private correspondence, not found elsewhere in print, illustrative of the political conditions from 1783 to 1789 and of the genesis and progress of the movement for a new constitution.]

THOMAS DONALDSON, editor, *The Public Domain; its History, with Statistics*. (3d edition. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1884.)—A very cyclopædia of information on all questions relating to our public lands, acquisition, administration, survey, tenure, etc. In view of the present interest in the expansion of the United States owing to recent developments in our history, this work is of great service for reference on the subject of the acquisition of territory by the United States. The texts are carelessly copied and often inaccurate.

CHARLES DOWNER HAZEN, *Contemporary American Opinion of the French Revolution* (Johns Hopkins Uni-



## Sources for General Reference 185

*versity Studies in Historical and Political Science*, extra Vol. XVI., Baltimore, 1897).—Part I comprises “Opinions of Americans Abroad,”—Jefferson, Gouverneur Morris, and Monroe, who were in France at the time of the Revolution,—as shown by extracts from their writings, with a historical sketch and running comment by the author. Part II comprises “Opinions of American at Home,” as shown by extracts from the writings of some of the more prominent men, and by numerous selections from newspapers, joined together by comments so as to form a continuous narrative. While not intended as a source-book, this work contains a most interesting and excellent series of extracts from the sources, illustrating the opinion of this country upon the French Revolution, and showing the interest and excitement which that movement aroused in America between 1789 and 1794. It will be found especially helpful for those to whom the original material is not accessible, or who desire some guidance in the handling of that material.

EDWARD MCPHERSON, *The Political History of the United States of America during the Great Rebellion*, No. 6, 1860–April 15, 1865. (4th edition, Washington, J. J. Chapman.)—A very useful collection of documents, such as presidential proclamations, acts of Congress, resolutions of Congress and state legislatures, civil and military correspondence illustrating the secession movement, the history of the Confederacy, the foreign and domestic policy of the federal government, and the slavery question.

EDWARD MCPHERSON, *The Political History of the United States of America during the Period of Reconstruction*, April 15, 1865–July 15, 1870. (3d edition Washington, J. J. Chapman.)—Similar to the *History of the Rebellion* above mentioned. The volumes have been continued by McPherson's *Handbook of Politics*, in 12 vols., down to 1894.

H[EZEKIAH] NILES, *Principles and Acts of the Revolution in America*. (Baltimore, 1822; revised edition, New York, Barnes, 1876.)—The new edition is much more systematic in arrangement, and is an improvement in other respects. This work is a useful collection of speeches, letters, and proceedings of legislative and executive bodies illustrating almost every phase of the Revolution. It is badly arranged and not critically edited.

SELIM H. PEABODY, compiler, *American Patriotism*. (New York, American Book Exchange, 1880.)—Speeches and public papers from 1764 to 1876. The documents are given in full, and are all of true historical importance. The cheapest and most easily obtainable collection of the kind.

BEN: PERLEY POORE, compiler, *The Federal and State Constitutions, Colonial Charters, and other Organic Laws of the United States*. (2 pts., paged continuously. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1877.)—This collection gives not only the last charter or constitution in force at the time of publication but intends also to print all such instruments of government as have been in operation in the different states, from

## Sources for General Reference 187

their establishment as colonies or territories down to the date of publication of this collection. All changes and amendments are also included. There are some omissions and mistakes, but the two volumes form quite the best work of reference for colonial charters and state constitutions that has yet appeared.

JAMES D. RICHARDSON, editor, *A Compilation of the Messages and Papers of the Presidents, 1789-1897*. (10 vols. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1896-1899.)—Of the several collections of presidents' messages, this is far the most complete though poorly arranged and indexed. The next in serviceableness is:

EDWIN WILLIAMS, editor, *The Statesman's Manual*. (4 vols. New York, 1854.)—A collection of messages of the presidents, now almost superseded by Richardson's compilation.

H. E. SCUDDER, editor, *Men and Manners in America One Hundred Years Ago*. (New York, Scribner, 1876.)—An admirable selection from memoirs, travels, diaries, and letters, illustrating life in America in the last quarter of the eighteenth century. One of the best books available for school work.

EDMUND CLARENCE STEDMAN and ELLEN MACKAY HUTCHINSON, editors, *Library of American Literature, from the Earliest Settlement to the Present Time*. (11 vols. New York, C. L. Webster, 1888-1890.)—A very useful set for a school library. The first two volumes are conspicuously serviceable in the history of the colonial period. The extracts in the later volumes which are of direct service for historical instruction are relatively fewer, though still considerable in number.

UNITED STATES, DEPARTMENT OF STATE, *Treaties and Conventions concluded between the United States of America and other Powers since July 4, 1776*. (Washington, 1889.)—Besides the texts of the treaties, this volume contains nearly 200 pages of historical notes on American diplomatic history, by J. C. Bancroft Davis and others.

FRANCIS WHARTON, editor, *A Digest of the International Law of the United States*. (2d edition. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1887.)—Contains copious extracts from the state papers of the United States relating to the questions of international law that have been at issue between the United States and foreign powers. Some of the diplomatic correspondence given is not elsewhere in print. Very valuable for study of foreign policy of the country.

### § 63. List of Available Sources in American History.

JOHN ADAMS and ABIGAIL ADAMS, *Familiar Letters during the Revolution*. Edited by Charles Francis Adams. (New York, Hurd & Houghton, 1876.)—Private letters, when written by competent persons, form one of the very best kinds of sources. This correspondence gives us a very valuable picture of the times. It fulfils exactly the prediction of John Adams in directing that these letters should be preserved: "They may exhibit to our posterity a kind of picture of the manners, opinions, and principles of these times of perplexity, danger, and distress."

## List of Available Sources 189

ADOLPHE DE BACOURT, *Souvenirs of a Diplomat*. (New York, Holt, 1885.)—Private letters from the French minister in Washington. They begin in June, 1840, and end in July, 1842, and abound in vivid realistic sketches of the public men of the day.

THOMAS HART BENTON, *Thirty Years' View*. (2 vols. New York, Appleton, 1854-1856.)—Senator Benton compiled this review of the political history of the United States, 1820-1850, from his own papers and speeches and the private papers of Andrew Jackson. It was for many years the fullest history of the period. It is now valuable mainly as the work of a contemporary participant in the political struggles of that time, and for its excerpts from speeches and letters.

WILLIAM BRADFORD, *History of Plymouth Plantation*. Edited by Charles Deane, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, 4th Series, Vol. III, and as a separate publication (Boston, 1856); also a facsimile reprint, edited by J. A. Doyle (London, Ward & Downey, and Boston, Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1896); also an edition published by the state of Massachusetts (Boston, Wright & Potter, 1898) and sold to the public.—This history by Bradford, the second governor of Plymouth colony, is "the most important of all known sources of information respecting the Pilgrims from 1608 to 1646." "The foremost man in the colony . . . [nature and opportunity equally fitted him to be its chronicler from the beginning. No one could speak with more authority than he of the inner motives and guiding policy of the original colonists]" (Winsor, *Narrative and Critical*

*History*, III, 286, 289). The most available edition is that published by the state of Massachusetts in 1898.

J. S. BUCKINGHAM, *The Slave States of America*. (2 vols. London, Fisher, 1842.)—A picture of slavery and of Southern life by an experienced traveler, who went through the South on a lecturing tour. He was a careful observer and he reports upon the actual conditions existing among slaves in different sections of the South as to food, clothing, housing, labor, treatment, prices of slaves, slave trade foreign and domestic, ratio of black to white population, free blacks, productiveness of free and slave labor, education of negroes; also upon general industrial conditions both rural and urban, poor whites, internal improvements, railroads, canals, steamboats, state of travel, hotels, public buildings, churches and religious conditions, charities, education, literature, newspapers, and morals. It is a comprehensive and valuable survey for both the general reader and the student.

ANDREW BURNABY, *Travels through the Middle Settlements in North America in the Years 1759 and 1760*. (London, 1775.)—Burnaby was a minister of the Anglican church who travelled in the colonies in 1759–1760, and published an account of his travels in the hope that it “might conduce to a reconciliation” between the mother country and her colonies. He was so active and careful an observer “that little escaped him, whether of the people’s character or their manners, or the aspect of the towns they dwelt in, or of the political and social movements which engaged them.”

## List of Available Sources 191

His work is consequently one of the best sources for colonial life.

FRANCOIS JEAN CHASTELLUX, *Travels in North America in the Years 1780, 1781, and 1782*. (Translated by George Grieve. 2 vols. London, 1787.)—Chastellux was a French general who served in our Revolutionary War in Count Rochambeau's army. His *Travels* consists of the journal that he kept while serving in this country, and contains interesting sketches, by a sympathetic critic, of prominent men and events of the Revolution.

REUBEN DAVIS, *Recollections of Mississippi and Mississippians*. (Boston, Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1891.)—Mainly interesting as a revelation of a type of Southern character which dominated the life of the Southwest—the honest self-portrait of a "fire eater," which reminds one not a little of the *Autobiography* of Benvenuto Cellini.

CHARLES DICKENS, *American Notes for General Circulation*, 1st edition. (2 vols. London, Chapman & Hall, 1842. Many other editions, both English and American.)—Characteristic and vivid descriptions of American life as the great novelist observed it in a journey of a few months. Attracted, as at home, by the grotesque or the humorous aspects of life, he made a selection of material for comment which wounded the national self-esteem of many Americans; they felt hurt that the things of which they were naturally proud received less attention than some things that they would have liked to ignore.

TIMOTHY DWIGHT, *Travels in New England and New York, 1796-1811*. (4 vols. New Haven, 1821-1822.)—Dwight was a Congregational clergyman, and President of Yale College from 1795 to his death. He was the author of a considerable number of sermons, essays, and poems of great repute in his time; but the most important of his writings is his *Travels*, the notes of the trips that he made during his vacations after becoming President of Yale. It contains much of value and historical interest.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, *Autobiography*. (Edited by John Bigelow. Philadelphia, Lippincott, 1868.)—One of the best pictures of life in the colonies, and at the same time the priceless self-revelation of the only American who achieved a world-wide reputation before the Revolution. Many other editions.

GEORGE GIBBS, *Memoirs of the Administrations of Washington and John Adams*. (2 vols. New York, 1846.)—Mr. Gibbs prepared these *Memoirs* from the papers of his grandfather, Oliver Wolcott, and they are of the greatest value because of these authentic materials. Dealing to a large extent with the early financial problems and administration of our government, they may prove too abstruse and technical for ordinary school use; but in addition to these features they contain much of interest upon men and events. The letters from the various Federalist leaders are among our best sources of information in regard to the ideas and aims of the Federalist party.

ULYSSES S. GRANT, *Personal Memoirs*. (2 vols.



## List of Available Sources 193

New York, C. L. Webster, 1885-1886. New edition, 2 vols., New York, Century Co., 1895.)—A simple unaffected narrative giving a clear picture of the Civil War in broad outline. An example of the kind of sources which combine the highest value with unfailing interest.

FRANCIS J. GRUND, *The Americans, in their Moral, Social, and Political Relations*. (London, Longmans, and Boston, Marsh, 1837.)—One of the most intelligent and thorough descriptions of the United States in the Jacksonian period. The author was a journalist of German birth.

ALEXANDER HAMILTON AND OTHERS, *The Federalist*, edited by P. L. Ford (New York, Holt, 1898); by H. C. Lodge (New York, Putnam, 1892); by E. H. Scott, *The Federalist and other Constitutional Papers* (Chicago, Albert, Scott & Co., 1894).—Of the many editions of *The Federalist*, these are the most available. Lodge's is the cheapest; Ford's has historical and explanatory notes and the best index; and Scott's has a liberal selection of other contemporary essays for or against the new constitution.

THOMAS HUTCHINSON, *Diary and Letters*. Edited by Peter Orlando Hutchinson. (2 vols. Boston, Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1884-1886.)—Thomas Hutchinson was the last royal governor of Massachusetts, a careful and scientific writer and an historian of real ability, though his merits were not recognized by his contemporaries on account of his opposition to the struggles for liberty on the part of the colonists. Though

his writings are somewhat prejudiced by his position as governor of a revolting colony, his *Diary* throws a very important light on the period just before the Revolution.

PETER KALM, *Travels into North America*. Translated by John Reinhold Forster. (2 vols. Warrington, 1770-1771.)—Kalm, a Swedish botanist and professor in the University of Abo, in Finland, was sent to this country by the Swedish government on a botanical tour in 1748-1751. He published an account of his work in his *Travels*. He was a very careful and accurate observer, and the records of his special studies are interspersed with interesting descriptions of places and shrewd comments on the people and their manner of life. His prediction of the independence of the colonies should be noticed (reprinted in Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, § 122).

ABRAHAM LINCOLN, *Complete Works*. Edited by John G. Nicolay and John Hay. (2 vols. New York, Century Co., 1894.)—Mainly letters and speeches. The best source for the study of Lincoln's character and policy.

JAMES RUSSELL LOWELL, *The Biglow Papers*. (Boston, Houghton, Mifflin & Co., many editions.)—The First Series illustrates the New England anti-slavery hostility to the Mexican War; the Second Series, the Unionist feeling toward the South and toward England. The best example of political satire in American literature.

## List of Available Sources 195

WILLIAM MACLAY, *Journal*. (Edited by Edgar S. Maclay. New York, Appleton, 1890.)—William Maclay, a United States senator from Pennsylvania in the first Congress, 1789-1791, has left a journal of these two years, which is principally taken up with a racy account of the debates in the house of which he was a member, but which also gives incidentally a picture of the social life and ceremonies of the time, and some very sharp criticism of prominent personages. He was extremely democratic in his political views, and the editor of his *Journal* claims for him the distinction of being the founder of the Democratic-Republican party. Maclay's views were somewhat distorted by his violent prejudices; but his *Journal* is of the first importance, as it is the only account that we have of the debates in the Senate during the First Congress.

JAMES MADISON, *Debates in the Federal Convention*. In various editions, e. g., J. Elliot, *Debates on the Adoption of the Federal Constitution*, vol. V.; separate edition, edited by E. H. Scott. (Chicago, Albert Scott & Co., 1893.)—A convenient edition of the most valuable and complete record of the debates in the Federal Convention of 1783.

FRANK MOORE, editor, *Diary of the American Revolution*. (2 vols. New York, Scribner, and London, Sampson Low, 1860.)—A well-chosen series of extracts from newspapers, diaries, and other contemporaneous writings, arranged chronologically so as to give an almost daily record of events from 1775 to 1781. Extracts are made from both Whig and Tory writings, the editor's

aim being to present the events as they appeared to the people at the time. The reader is left to form his own judgment as to the value of the extracts according to the authority from which the selection is taken, the editor insisting "that the errors and lampoons of a period belong as much to its history as the facts and flatteries." This work may well be supplemented by selections from the same compiler's *Songs and Ballads of the American Revolution* (New York, Appleton, 1856).

FREDERICK LAW OLMTED, *A Journey in the Seaboard Slave States* (New York, Dix and Edwards, 1856),—*A Journey through Texas* (New York, Dix and Edwards, 1857),—*A Journey in the Black Country* (New York, Mason Brothers, 1860),—*The Cotton Kingdom* (2 vols., New York, Mason Brothers, 1861.)—The most accurate and trustworthy description that we have of the economic characteristics of the South just before the Civil War. The author was a practical farmer who has since attained great distinction as a landscape gardener. *The Cotton Kingdom* is a condensed and revised edition of the three works first mentioned.

FRANCIS PARKMAN, JR., *The California and Oregon Trail: being Sketches of Prairie and Rocky Mountain Life*. (New York, Putnam, 1849; later editions, Boston, Little and Brown; New York, T. Y. Crowell & Co.)—Parkman is one of the greatest, if not the greatest, of American historians. In spite of constant suffering from illness and from partial blindness for many years, Park-

## List of Available Sources 197

man continued his historical work, and finally completed his task of describing the French occupation of America and the struggles with the English. Two years after his graduation from Harvard he travelled in the West, exploring the region beyond the Rocky Mountains. The results of his observations were embodied in *The Oregon Trail* (as the later editions of his book are called), which is a remarkable piece of first-hand description of the Indians, trappers, and emigrants of the Rocky Mountain region.

JOSIAH QUINCY, *Figures of the Past from the Leaves of Old Journals*. (Boston, Roberts, 1883.)—A series of charming papers upon men and events chiefly in the second and third decades of the present century. The papers are based on the journals which Mr. Quincy kept throughout his life, and they purposely convey contemporary impressions. They are consequently of historical as well as personal interest.

WILLIAM HOWARD RUSSELL, *My Diary North and South*. (New York, Harper, 1863.)—The observations of the correspondent of the *London Times* during the opening months of the Civil War. A valuable picture of the times.

JOHN SHERMAN and W. T. SHERMAN, *The Sherman Letters: Correspondence between General and Senator Sherman from 1837 to 1891*. (Edited by Rachel Sherman Thorndike. New York, Scribner, 1894.)—This volume of letters will prove one of the best sources for students' work for this period of American history. Almost every great question is discussed by the brothers,

and illustrated from the standpoint respectively of the soldier and the statesman.

WILLIAM T. SHERMAN, *Memoirs*. (2 vols. New York, Appleton, 1875; 2d edition, 1886; 3d edition, 1896.)—General Sherman's *Memoirs* belongs in the first rank of this class of material; it is equally valuable as a picture of the war and as a revelation of character. The style is direct, clear and incisive.

SUSAN DABNEY SMEDES, *Memorials of a Southern Planter*. (Baltimore, Cushings & Bailey, 1887.)—This work is a record of the life of the author's father, who lived in Mississippi from 1835 until, rendered poor by the war, he moved to Baltimore. It is the story of a man "worth knowing on his own account," and a picture of Southern life in slavery times. "Of value for its local coloring."

ALEXIS DE TOCQUEVILLE, *Democracy in America*. Translated by Henry Reeve. (4 vols. London, 1835-1840. Also many later editions, the latest by D. C. Gilman, 2 vols., New York, Century Co., 1898.)—The most famous commentary on American society ever written. Of permanent interest and value as a penetrating study of a democratic society by a European political philosopher of the highest order. It is, of course, not free from misapprehensions and occasional premature judgments, but these do not impair its value as a document. Especially instructive are the comparisons between the free and the slave States and the forecast of the struggle between them.

## List of Available Sources 199

MRS. FRANCES TROLLOPE, *Domestic Manners of the Americans*. (2 vols. London, Whittaker, 1832; new edition, 2 vols., New York, Dodd and Mead, 1894.)

—Mrs. Trollope, the mother of Anthony Trollope, resided about three years and a half (1829–1832) in the United States, and wrote this book, which is very lively reading but does not describe the “domestic manners” of the time. It exaggerates the crudeness of a class of our early society, and does not truly represent the life of that period; yet, if this fact is made clear, there are few books which can be used so successfully to interest the pupil of the present day, and at the same time to give some conception of the uncouth and yet vigorous life of over fifty years ago.

BRISSET DE WARVILLE, *New Travels in the United States of America, performed in 1788*. Anonymous translation. (London, Dublin and New York, 1792; also 2 vols., London, 1794, and 1 vol., Boston, 1797.)

—Brissot, a famous Girondist leader in the French Revolution, was one of those who were guillotined during the Reign of Terror. He visited the United States in 1788 to inquire into the social and economic conditions of this country. He was a sympathetic observer of American life and institutions, and embodied the notes of his observations in his *New Travels*.

JOHN WINTHROP, *The History of New England from 1630 to 1649* (edited by James Savage, 2 vols., Boston, 1826, New Edition, Little, Brown & Co., Boston, 1853.) An invaluable repository of facts and contemporary comment relating mainly to the rise of the

Massachusetts Bay Colony. Winthrop's narration is calm and dispassionate. It is in the form of a journal and most of it is in the strictest sense a contemporary record. Especially valuable for the study of the actual processes of the government of the Colony.

#### § 64. References to the Sources of American History, arranged by Periods.

A brief list of the most available collections and single works of American history will be found above (§§ 61, 62, 63). The purpose of this section of the committee's work is to divide the whole field into convenient periods, and under each period to suggest the materials which are most appropriate. Reference will be made only to books which are in print, reasonable in price, and comprehensible by school children. Additional sources and a more detailed analysis may be found down to 1865, in Channing and Hart, *Guide to the Study of American History*. This work includes many of the more available titles in Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, which, however, comes down in detail only to about 1812.

Since the materials on American history are more voluminous and more scattered than in any other field, pains have been taken to analyze the collections.



## Basis of American History 201

The principal writers are all represented by excerpts in some of these collections, and the original works may be reached through the references in secondary books or in §§ 61, 62 above.

### § 65. Basis of American History.

Most of the modern text-books have an introduction upon the physical conditions, the aboriginal inhabitants, and the political geography of the country. Accounts of the land and its productions, as the first settlers saw them, will be found in the narratives of discovery and settlement mentioned below. There are also special extracts, descriptive of parts of the country and of its productions, in Hart, *Source-Book*, § 11 (Josselyn), § 12 (Ash on Indian corn); Hart, *American History told by Contemporaries*, I, § 32 (Barlowe), § 35 (Cartier), § 38 (Juet), § 39 (Champlain), § 42 (Marquette), § 43 (La Salle), § 47 (Hayes), § 59 (Strachey), § 90 (John Smith). Colby, *Selections from the Sources of English History*, § 66, quotes Hariot.

From the first the Indians attracted the curiosity and interest of the white explorers and settlers. Most of the original accounts of them are now rare and costly, and reprints are in expensive editions. Schools must in general depend on the abundant

extracts to be found in the collections: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 21 (Eliot), No. 22 (Wheelock), No. 87 (Morton), No. 88 (Hubbard); *Liberty Bell Leaflets*, No. 7 (Weyser); Higginson, *Young Folks' Book of American Explorers*, p. 177 (Barlowe), p. 225 (Gilbert), p. 236 (Smith); Hart, *Source-Book*, § 6 (Champlain), § 9 (Spelman), § 38 (Kalm); *Contemporaries*, I, § 23 (De Soto), § 39 (Champlain), § 40 (Jogues), § 60 (Strachey), § 64 (Hamor), § 91 (Lechford), § 92 (treaty), § 147 (Stockwell), § 152 (Megapolensis). The above extracts include most of the significant parts of the first-hand narratives.

The development of the historical geography of the country is the main subject of Caldwell, *Territorial Development* (*American History Studies*, III), and of several of the *American History Leaflets*, especially No. 16 (1584-1774), No. 5 (1763-1769), No. 22 (state claims, 1776-1802), No. 32 (territorial administration, 1775-1790), No. 34 (Isthmus canal).

### § 66. Spanish Discoveries.

For the discovery of America, the original narratives are to be found in full, for the most part only in large collections, such as those of Hakluyt and the Hakluyt Society; but good extracts are abun-

dant. The footnotes to Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History* and to E. G. Bourne's *Essays in Historical Criticism*, No. 2, will lead to the larger sources for schools. The following may be mentioned.—On the traditional geography previous to discovery: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 30 (Strabo), No. 32 (Marco Polo).—On the Icelandic discoveries, interesting extracts from the sagas; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 31; Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, Book I; *American History Leaflets*, No. 3; Hart, *American History Told by Contemporaries*, I, § 16.

Nothing is more interesting for schools than the original accounts of Columbus's voyages. His *Letters*, and the *Life* by his son, will be found more or less complete in *Old South Leaflets*, Nos. 29, 33, 71, 102; Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, Book II (very interesting pieces); *American History Leaflets*, No. 1; Hart, *Source Book*, § 1; *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 17, 19.

On later Spanish discoveries, contemporary accounts of Vespucci's voyages are in *Old South Leaflets*, Nos. 34, 90.—On the name America, the famous extract from Waltzeemueller is in *Contemporaries*, I, § 20.

The Spanish inland explorations and conquests are well represented in the collections.—Cortez's conquest of Mexico: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 35;

Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, § 21.—Coronado's expedition : *Old South Leaflets*, No. 20 ; *American History Leaflets*, No. 13 ; Hart, *Source Book*, § 3 ; *Contemporaries*, I, § 24.—Pizarro's conquest of Peru : *Contemporaries*, I, § 22.—De Soto's expedition. *Old South Leaflets*, No. 36 ; Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, Book VI ; Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, § 23.—De Vaca's expedition : *Old South Leaflets*, No. 39 ; Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, Book IV.—Miles Philips in Mexico : Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, § 25.

### § 67. English Discoveries and Pre-colonial Exploration, 1493-1605.

The discussion about the Cabot voyages, and the early claims of the English to a part of the American continents involves many disputed points, but Mr. G. P. Winship in various publications is one of the best authorities on early English voyages. See also Winsor, *Narrative and Critical History*. The ascertainable facts are to be found in extracts printed in *Old South Leaflets*, No. 37 ; Caldwell, *Territorial Development*, ch. ii, § 3 ; Higginson, *Young Folks' Book of American Explorers*, Book iv ; *American History Leaflets*, No. 9 ; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 2 (Sebastian Cabot's version) ; *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 26, 48.

More directly connected with English colonization are the later English voyages. These are discussed, and some extracts quoted, in Payne's *Elizabethan Seamen*. G. C. Lee, in his *Source-Book of English History*, ch. xix, deals with this subject, and there are several extracts in Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 28-33.—Hawkin's voyages: Lee, *Source-Book*, § 144; Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, § 29.—Drake's voyages in Lee, *Source-Book*, § 145; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 4; *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 30-31.—Frobisher in Lee, *Source-Book*, § 146.—Amadas and Barlowe in Lee, *Source-Book*, § 147; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 92; Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, 175-185; *Contemporaries*, I, § 32.—Raleigh's Guiana voyage: Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, Book viii; *Contemporaries*, I, § 33.—Fight of the Revenge: Colby, *Selections*, § 67.—Gilbert's voyage of 1583: Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, 167-174. On the attempts at colonization before 1607: Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, pp. 186-200, and ch. x (Lane, Gosnold, Weymouth, Popham). Drake's voyage is of course the most romantic of these incidents.

Lists of complete narratives may be found in Channing and Hart's *Guide*, § 93; and long extracts are printed in the references just cited.

### §68. French, Swedish, and Dutch Voyages and Settlements.

Most text-books treat of the explorations and settlements of other European nations before they proceed to the details of French colonization. Extracts from contemporary French voyages will be found in Caldwell, *Territorial Development*, ch. i, Part i.—Verrazano's voyage: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 17; Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, 60-70; Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, § 34.—Cartier's voyage: Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, Book vi; *Contemporaries*, I, § 35.—Hudson's voyages: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 94; Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, ch. xiii; *Contemporaries*, I, § 38.

On the early French inland explorations there are many extracts in the collections.—Champlain's account: Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, Book xii; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 6; *Contemporaries*, I, § 39.—Marquette's discovery of the Mississippi: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 46; *Contemporaries*, I, § 42.—La Salle on the Mississippi: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 36; *Contemporaries*, I, § 43.—Significant parts of Father Jogue's journal of experiences among the Iroquois; *Contemporaries*, I, § 40.—Trade with Canada: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 38; *Contemporaries*, II, § 111 (fur trade).—Canadian government: *Contemporaries*, I, § 41 (Le Clercq); II, § 112 (Kalm).—Settlement of

## French and Dutch Voyages 207

Louisiana, *Contemporaries*, II, § 109 (La Harpe), § 110 (Spotswood).—The French colony in Carolina: Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, Book vii; *Contemporaries*, I, § 36.—Quebec: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 91.

The early Dutch settlements in America are set forth in Brodhead's *New York* and numerous collections of documents on the history of New York and in the following pieces and extracts.—Voyage of De Vries: *Contemporaries*, I, § 151.—Van der Donck's description: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 69; Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, § 154.—Wassenaer's account: *Contemporaries*, I, § 153.—Dutch charter of New Amsterdam: *Liberty Bell Leaflets*, No. 1.—Dutch settlements in general: Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, 303–305; *Contemporaries*, I, § 169 (Michaelius), § 170 (New England Commissioners), § 171 (Hegeman).—Ten Hove's account of the surrender of New Amsterdam to the English: Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, § 155.

On the foundation of New Sweden: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 96; *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 158–159.

### § 69. Conditions of English Colonization, 1606–1650.

One of the most necessary things in the study of colonial history is to understand what were the methods and conditions of the colonizers. Sources on the legal basis for the planting and governing of

the colonies will be found in § 73 below. The social and economic conditions of England during the reigns of the Tudors and the early Stuarts are set forth through copious extracts in the source-books of English history: Elizabeth Kendall, *Source-Book*, §§ 61-68; C. W. Colby, *Selections*, §§ 64, 65, 99; E. F. Henderson, *Side-Lights*, Groups i, iv, vii; Lee, *Source-Book*, §§ 133-143. Extracts from John Evelyn are in Hart, *Source-Book*, § 7. A part of Harrison's account of the condition of England, from Holinshed's *Chronicle: Contemporaries*, I, § 44.

The ecclesiastical conditions and the rise of Puritanism are illustrated by Prothero, *Documents*, 413-438; G. C. Lee, *Source-Book*, §§ 134-139; Edward Arber, *Story of the Pilgrim Fathers* (copious materials on the Pilgrims in England and Holland). In *Old South Leaflets*, Nos. 48, 77, will be found the interesting biography of Elder Brewster by Governor Bradford, and Cotton Mather's lives of Bradford and Winthrop, which include excellent surveys of the Puritan reasons for emigration.

Contemporary accounts of the details and conditions of emigration: Caldwell, *Survey*, ch. i, §§ 1-4; Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 45-48. Emigration and its incidents: Hart, *Source-Book*, §§ 8, 10 (Castell and Sadler); *Contemporaries*, I, § 49 (Bradford).—Narratives of emigrant voyages: *Contemporaries*,



## The Southern Colonies 209

I, § 56 (Higginson), § 57 (Clap), § 58 (Dankers and Sluyter).

Official organization and direction of the colonies: *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 50-52.—Description of the character of the colonists: *Contemporaries*, I, § 61 (Gates).—Bradford's reasons for the departure of the Pilgrims, and Robinson's advice to the Pilgrims, are in *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 49, 55, and (at much greater length) in Arber, *Story of the Pilgrim Fathers*.

### § 70. The Southern Colonies.

The most convenient subdivision of early colonial history is the establishment of the Southern, New England, and Middle groups of colonies. The larger part of the history of the first group is, of course, the settlement of Virginia, the earliest and always the most important of the Southern colonies.—Some of the extracts in Stedman and Hutchinson, *Library of American Literature*, I, now become available.—The most entertaining scenic is John Smith: *True Relation* and *General Historie* (various editions).—Extracts: Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, ch. xi; *American History Leaflets*, No. 27; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 13; *Contemporaries*, I, § 62.—Other descriptions of the Virginia charter government: *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 59, 61, 63-67, 67.—Virginia during the Commonwealth: *Contempora-*

ries, I, § 68 (Berkeley), § 69 (Bennet).—Berkeley's famous report of 1671: *Contemporaries*, I, § 70.—Bacon's rebellion: *Contemporaries*, I, § 71.—Virginia in the eighteenth century: *Contemporaries*, II, §§ 33, 37.

Plantation life and slavery in Virginia: Hart, *Source-Book*, §§ 34, 35 (acts of the Assembly); *Contemporaries*, I, § 86 (Godwyn), § 87 (Fitzhugh).—Tobacco culture: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 43 (Cook's satire), *Contemporaries*, I, § 88 (Clayton).—King James's objections to tobacco trading: Henderson, *Side-Lights*, 36–38; Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, § 83.

On the early conditions in Maryland: Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 72–77 (selections from White, Hammond, and Alsop, and from official papers of the Baltimore family).—Toleration Act: *Contemporaries*, I, § 84.—Later conditions in Maryland: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 18 (Dankers and Sluyter), § 43 (Ebenezer Cook); *Contemporaries*, II, § 36 (Governor Sharpe).

The Carolinas were settled much later and came under a different dispensation.—Archdale's account: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 24.—Other accounts: *Contemporaries*, I, § 78 (Lords Proprietors), § 79 (Woodward), § 80 (Fundamental Constitutions), § 81 (Wilson).—Randolph's investigations: *Contemporaries*, II, § 34.—Eliza Lucas's lively account, *Contemporaries*, II, § 35.

## The New England Colonies 211

On settlements in Georgia, Oglethorpe's account : Hart, *Source-Book*, § 27 ; *Contemporaries*, II, § 39. —Other accounts : *Contemporaries*, II, § 40 (Bolzius), § 41 (Quincy), § 42 (slavery question), § 43 (orphan-home), § 44 (Burke).

Materials on the charters and government of the Southern colonies will be enumerated below, § 73.—Special discussions of social life are in § 74 below.

### § 71. The New England Colonies.

On no field of American history is the original material so abundant, so varied, and so significant as on the settlement of New England. Nowhere else did the leaders of colonization themselves feel such a sense of the importance of their life work, and several of them have left interesting records. Stedman and Hutchinson, *Library of American Literature* contains many well chosen pieces on New England history and life.

On the settlement of Plymouth, many of the extracts cited above in § 69 will be found useful, especially Arber, *Story of the Pilgrim Fathers*. The most important authority is William Bradford, *History of the Plymouth Plantation*, from which large extracts will be found as follows : Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, ch. xiv ; *Old South Leaflets*, Nos. 48, 49 ; *American History Leaflets*, No. 29 ;

Colby, *Selections from the Sources of English History*, § 70; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 15; *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 49, 97-100, 117. Other accounts of Plymouth colony, by Winslow, White and Morton: Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, ch. xiv; *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 101-103. The Mayflower Compact: Hart, *Source-Book*, frontispiece (facsimile).

On Massachusetts, John Smith's description of the coast is in Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, § 90. The best authority on early Massachusetts is John Winthrop, *History of New England*, of which long and pertinent extracts are in *American History Leaflets*, No. 31; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 50; Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, ch. xv.—Briefer extracts: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 21 (New Hampshire), § 28 (New England life); *Contemporaries*, I, § 107 (representative government), § 118 (Connecticut).

Other authors are represented in extracts as follows: Higginson, *Young Folks' Book*, ch. xv (Higginson and Clap); *Old South Leaflets*, No. 52 (John Eliot); Hart, *Source-Book*, § 17 (Dudley), § 29 (Lechford); *Contemporaries*, I, § 105 (Edward Johnson), § 110 (Lechford), § 111 (Child), § 112 (Ward), § 130 (Bulkeley), § 132 (Endicott), § 135 (Increase Mather), §§ 125, 145 (Josselyn), § 148 (Cotton Mather), § 149 (Samuel Sewall).—Trial of the Antinomians: *Contemporaries*, I, § 108.

## The New England Colonies 213

The Quaker episode: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 30 (Robinson and Stevenson); *Contemporaries*, I, § 140 (Mary Dyer), § 141 (a trial), § 142 (Burrough).

Contemporary narratives of the Salem witchcraft: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 31 (Cotton Mather); *Contemporaries*, I, pp. 496, 512-514 (Josselyn and Sewall), II, § 16 (Lawson), § 17 (official testimony), § 18 (Sewall's repentance).—On witches in England: Colby, *Selections*, § 68.

On the settlement of Rhode Island there is what ought to exist for every state in the Union,—a special collection of the source material on the history of the community, viz., Kimball, *Pictures of Rhode Island in the Past*.—Other extracts: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 54 (Roger Williams); Hart, *Source-Book*, § 20 (Morton); *Contemporaries*, I, § 113 (Gorton), § 114 (Arnold), § 115 (Williams), § 116 (Sandford); II, § 19 (Cranston).

On New Hampshire: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 21 (Winthrop); *Contemporaries*, I, § 123 (Indian grant), § 124 (commissioners), § 123 (Josselyn), § 126 (Weare); II, § 21 (Wentworth).

On Maine there is a collection of valuable documents in Mary F. Farnham, *Documents Relating to the Territorial History of Maine* (Maine Historical Society, *Collections*, Second Series, 1901). There is an episode of Maine colonial history in *Contemporaries*, I, § 125 (Josselyn).

On Connecticut and New Haven: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 55 (Hooker); Hart, *Source-Book*, § 19 (Henry Wolcott); *Contemporaries*, I, § 117 (Bradford), § 118 (Winthrop), § 119 (Johnson), § 120 (Fundamental Orders), § 121 (consolidation), § 122 (Andros trouble); II, § 22 (Roger Wolcott).

Some descriptions of New England in general will be found in § 74 below. See also *Old South Leaflets*, No. 48 (Bradford on Brewster), No. 77 (Mather on Bradford and Winthrop); *Contemporaries*, I, § 96 (Norton on John Cotton); § 130 (Bulkeley).

Early Vermont history is connected with that of New Hampshire and New York.

## § 72. The Middle Colonies.

The largest and most important of the Middle colonies in colonial times was Pennsylvania, upon the history of which there are abundant source materials, especially Samuel Hazard, *Annals of Pennsylvania* (Philadelphia, Hazard and Mitchell, 1850).—Pennsylvania charters: *Liberty Bell Leaflets*, Nos. 3, 4.—Gabriel Thomas: *Liberty Bell Leaflets*, No. 5; Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, § 25.—Settlement: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 95; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 25 *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 161–163; II, § 28, § 29, § 31.

Delaware settlements: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 26 (Edmundson); *Contemporaries*, I, § 159 (Swedish colonies); § 160 (New England settlements); II, § 27 (separation from Pennsylvania).

On New Jersey: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 23 (John Fenwick); *Contemporaries*, I, § 164 (Berkeley and Carteret), § 165 (Newark town-meeting), § 166 (Werden), § 167 (Barclay, Forbes and Laurie), § 168 (Gabriel Thomas on West Jersey); II, § 30 (land riots).

The history of New York runs through the two successive phases of Dutch and English occupation. The best collection is O'Callaghan and Fernow, *Documents relative to the Colonial History of the State of New York* (15 vols., Albany, 1856-57).—Dutch colonization is treated above (§ 68).—On Dutch life: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 16; *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 150-154, 169, 170.—On New York under the English: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 22; *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 156, 157, 172; II, 29, 32.

### § 73. Colonial Government.

Little attention has been paid in school textbooks to systematic discussion of colonial government outside of the paper charters, and occasional descriptions of the assemblies; but material has now come forward in sufficient extracts to make such

study possible. Among the letters and diaries of colonial statesmen on this subject the most serviceable is probably Thomas Hutchinson, *Diary and Letters*.

The first elements of American government must be sought in the forms of government in England out of which sprang the colonial charter and local governments. On this subject, see Adams and Stephens, *Select Documents of English Constitutional History*, passim; Elizabeth Kendall, *Source-Book of English History*, §§ 148-154; Mabel Hill, *Liberty Documents*, chs. xi, xii; G. C. Lee, *Source-Book of English History*; and many numbers of *Old South Leaflets*.

The great documents of liberty to which the colonies habitually referred have been reprinted in many convenient forms.—Henry I's charter: Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. i; Adams and Stephens, *Select Documents*, No. 7; Lee, *Source-Book*, §§ 75-80.—Text of Magna Charta: Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. ii; Kendall, *Source-Book*, § 17; Adams and Stephens, *Select Documents*, No. 29; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 5.—Constitutions of Clarendon: Lee, *Source-Book*, § 60.—Petition of Right: Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. vi; Lee, *Source-Book*, § 155; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 23; Adams and Stephens, *Select Documents*, No. 189.—Habeas Corpus Act: Adams and Stephens, *Select Documents*, No. 23; Hill, *Liberty*



*Documents*, ch. viii, and in full in Appendix C ; Lee, *Source-Book*, § 177.—Bill of rights : Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. ix ; Lee, *Source-Book*, § 189 ; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 19 ; Adams and Stephens, *Select Documents*, No. 239.

The constitutional documents of the Puritan revolution are of much significance, from the influence which they exercised on the development of written constitutions in America. Reprints of some of these documents are in *Old South Leaflets*, Nos. 6, 25, 26, 27, 28 ; Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. vii ; Lee, *Source-Book*, § 167 ; Adams and Stephens, *Select Documents*, No. 214.

The general relation of England to the colonies is best set forth in extracts reprinted in Hart, *Source-Book*, § 48 (Lords of Trade), § 49 (elections), § 50 (New York Assembly), § 51 (governing by instructions) ; *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 53, 54 (ordinances on colonization).—*Contemporaries*, II, ch. vii, deals with the principles of English control : § 47 (Wise on arbitrary power), § 48 (Dummer's *Defence of the New England Charters*, which is also in Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xi), § 49 (Keith), § 50 (Douglass), § 52 (Burke), § 53 (Pownall), § 51 (Montesquieu), illustrates the view of the English Constitution and of the principles of constitutional government which came to be generally accepted by the colonists.

The special control of colonial trade through the Navigation Acts is the subject of many statutes, of which the significant parts are to be found in MacDonald, *Select Charters*, No. 22 (act of 1651), No. 25 (act of 1662), No. 28 (act of 1663), No. 34 (act of 1672), No. 43 (act of 1696), No. 50 (Molasses Act, 1733), No. 53 (Writ of Assistance, 1762). *American History Leaflets*, No. 19, includes extracts from most of these statutes; *Contemporaries*, II, § 45, contains extracts from the act of 1696.

On the execution of the Acts of Trade: Hart, *Source-Book* § 48 (Lords of Trade); *Contemporaries* II, § 34 (Edward Randolph), § 46 (Board of Trade), § 146 (colonial complaints on the Acts of Trade). Text of Writ of Assistance, 1762, in MacDonald, *Select Charters*, No. 53. Otis's argument on that subject in Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, § 131.

The colonial charters have been reprinted in a great variety of forms. The only collection which aims to be and is nearly complete is Ben: Perley Poore, *Charters and Constitutions* (2 parts, Washington, 1877); F. B. Hough, *American Constitutions* (2 vols., Albany, 1872), H. W. Preston, *Documents illustrative of American History*, pp. 1-169, has collected the more important charters; the most convenient and accurate edition is MacDonald, *Select Charters*, in which all the charters needful for school use are to be found.

The workings of the charter governments are described in extracts in *Contemporaries*, I, § 65 (first Virginian Assembly); §§ 51, 128 (New England); §§ 52, 107, 114, 135 (Massachusetts); §§ 67, 69 (Virginia); §§ 72, 84 (Maryland); § 80 (Carolina); § 102 (Plymouth); § 114 (Rhode Island); § 121 (New Haven). Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xi (reprints parts of Dummer's *Defence of the New England Charters*, in which the character of the charters is summarized).—The following charters are obtainable in leaflet form: Massachusetts; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 7; Pennsylvania, *Liberty Bell Leaflets*, Nos. 3, 4; West Jersey, *Liberty Bell Leaflets*, No. 2.

Puritan theocratic government is best illustrated in the origins of Plymouth and Massachusetts (§§ 69, 71 above); see especially *Contemporaries*, I, § 93 (John Calvin's doctrines), § 94 (Davenport), § 96 (Norton on *John Cotton*).

Side by side with the charters granted from England stand the great constitutional documents drawn up within the colonies for their own government. These are among the most interesting memorials of the foundations of American liberty. The following are the most important.—Mayflower Compact: Hart, *Source-Book*, frontispiece (facsimile); MacDonald, *Select Charters*, No. 5; Preston, *Documents*, 29.—Connecticut Fundamental Orders: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 8; *Contemporaries*, I, § 120;

Preston, *Documents*, 78.—Massachusetts Body of Liberties : *American History Leaflets*, No. 25 ; MacDonald, *Select Charters*, No. 17.—New Haven documents ; MacDonald, *Select Charters*, Nos. 16, 20.—Maryland Toleration Act : MacDonald, *Select Charters*, No. 21 ; Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, §, 84.—Carolina Fundamental Constitutions : MacDonald, *Select Charters*, No. 33 (discussed in Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, § 80).—New Jersey Constitutions ; MacDonald, *Select Charters*, Nos. 31, 37 ; *Liberty Bell Leaflets*, No. 2.—Pennsylvania Frames of Government : MacDonald, *Select Charters*, Nos. 40, 44, 46.—Delaware Frame : MacDonald, *Select Charters*, No. 41.

On the workings of colonial government in the seventeenth century the most extensive extracts are, Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 65, 68, 70, 93, 94.—Reprints of Winthrop's discussions : *Old South Leaflets*, Nos. 50, 66 ; *American History Leaflets*, No. 31 ; Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, § 107.—Cotton Mather's discussions : *Old South Leaflets*, No. 67.—Under the accounts of the foundation of each of the colonies will also be found discussions of the working of the government.

Various forms and propositions for colonial union, from 1696 to 1780, are set forth in Caldwell, *Survey*, ch. i, § 5, and ch. ii, and in *American History Leaflets*, No. 14.—New England Confedera-

tion: *American History Leaflets*, No. 7; MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 19; Preston, *Documents*, 85.—*Contemporaries*, I, §§ 95, 113, 129, 131, 170.—Albany Plan: *American History Leaflets*, No. 14; MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 52; Preston, *Documents*, 170.

On the workings of colonial government in the eighteenth century, the best inside view is Thomas Hutchinson, *Diary and Letters*, and *History of Massachusetts*, the only considerable collection of extracts aside from the charters is in *Contemporaries*, II, Part iii. A hundred pages are here devoted to a discussion, in succession, of the following topics, ch. vii (Principles of English Control), ch. viii (Colonial Governors), ch. ix (Colonial Assemblies), ch. x (Colonial Courts), ch. xi (Colonial Local Government). In Hart, *Source-Book*, §§ 49–52, will be found another set of brief extracts on the same topic. Mace, *Working Manual*, 126–138, prints some brief extracts bearing on the same subject; as also MacDonald, *Select Charters*, Nos. 50, 51, 52, 55.

#### § 74. Colonial Society.

It is only of late years that attention has been directed to the importance of the social and economic bases of history. There is now a suggestive secondary literature founded on contemporary

accounts of the life of the people, for example, Mrs. Alice Morse Earle, *Home Life in Colonial Days*, *Child Life in Colonial Days* and *Stage-Coach and Tavern Days*. Mrs. Earle's books throw together in the same chronological horizon materials that belong sometimes a century apart; but they are beautifully illustrated, the pictures being a source in themselves; and they contain frequent, though brief, extracts from narratives of the time. Horace E. Scudder, *Men and Manners in America One Hundred Years Ago*, is an admirable collection of extracts from a great variety of sources illustrating the life of the Revolutionary period.

The best contemporary book on colonial life is Peter Kalm, *Travels*, describing a visit made to America in 1748-1749; it is substantial and interesting, though not dramatic. Gabriel Thomas's accounts of West Jersey and Pennsylvania are written with much sprightliness and good humor (extracts in Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, § 168, II, § 25). Burnaby, *Travels*, is serious and instructive. The best single book on colonial conditions is Franklin's *Autobiography*, which may be had in many editions, especially in the *Riverside Literature Series*, Nos. 19, 20, and in Maynard, *English Classics Series*, Nos. 112, 113, 114 (extracts in Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, § 81). Colonel Byrd is one of the liveliest and most vigorous of the colonial writers, as may be

seen from extracts in *Contemporaries*, II, § 82. A reprint of the rare first edition of his works has been edited by J. S. Bassett. (Doubleday, Page & Co., New York.) In Bradford's and Winthrop's histories and the extracts therefrom indicated (§ 71, above), there is much about the social life of the times. The best single diary is Samuel Sewall's (extracts in *Contemporaries*, I, § 149; II, § 18). John Woolman's *Journal* is a classic for its simple narrative style and for its elevated philanthropy (extracts in *Contemporaries*, II, § 106). Sets of colonial newspapers are extremely rare, but the extracts in the publications of the New Jersey Historical Society (*Colonial Documents*, XI–XII, XIX–XX) are quite sufficient for school use, and should be in every school library, for they illustrate many phases of colonial life (extracts in *Contemporaries*, II, § 105).

Upon the colonial life of the seventeenth century, separate extracts may be found in Hart, *Source-Book*, §§ 28–35; *Contemporaries*, I, §§ 55–58 (emigrants), §§ 82–89 (life in the Southern colonies), §§ 90–96 (New England conditions), §§ 137–149 (New England life), §§ 169–172 (life in the Middle colonies).

On the social life of the eighteenth century, see Stedman and Hutchinson, *Library of American Literature*, vols. II–III; Caldwell's *Survey*, ch. i, § 7,

will be found useful ; also ch. vi.—Paul Leicester Ford's *New England Primer* (New York, Dodd, Mead & Co., 1897), is a convenient reprint of various editions of that inimitable work.—Extracts from *Poor Richard's Almanac* are in *Riverside Literature Series*, No. 21.—Hart, *Source-Book*, ch. vii, §§ 41-47, is given up to colonial life in the eighteenth century, and includes characteristic extracts from John Seymour, Ebenezer Cook, William Black, Kalm, Byrd and Alexander Graydon. *Contemporaries*, II, Part iv, is assigned to the same general topic : §§ 80-84 (the life of the people, with extracts from Madam Knight, Franklin, Byrd, Eliza Lucas and Captain Goelet) ; §§ 85-89 (commerce and currency, with various official narratives of piracy, smuggling and paper money) ; §§ 90-96 (intellectual life, including various accounts of schools and colleges) ; §§ 97-101 (religious life, including extracts from Morris, Story, Wesley, Belcher and Secker). See the Revolutionary travellers, Chastellux, Brissot de Warville, etc. Slavery and servitude : Caldwell, *Survey*, ch. vi ; Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, §§ 102-108 (includes significant parts of the Germantown protest, of Sewall's *Selling of Joseph*, and of Woolman's *Journal*).



## The Struggle with France 225

### § 75. The Struggle with France, 1699-1763.

The great secondary authority on the relations with France is Parkman, and through his footnotes additional source material may be derived.—Accounts of the French settlements in both Canada and Louisiana are described in § 68 above. On this subject the amount of material in school collections is small: see Caldwell, *Territorial Development*, ch. i.—Diplomatic landmarks in MacDonald, *Select Charters*, Nos. 45, 47, 51, 54 (treaties of 1697, 1713, 1748, 1763).—Literary and other material in Stedman and Hutchinson, *Library of American Literature*, vols. I, II and III.

French and Indian War: *Contemporaries*, II, §§ 122-129.—Knox's Narrative of the taking of Quebec: in full in *Old South Leaflets*, No. 73; extracts in Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, § 129, and Kendall, *Source-Book*, § 118.—Wolfe's letters from Quebec: Colby, *Selections*, § 95.—Life on a man-of-war, Smollett's picture: Colby, *Selections*, § 93.—An extended set of documents will be found in Hart, *Source-Book*, §§ 39, 40 (including Washington's account of Braddock's defeat); *Contemporaries*, II, §§ 109-112 (French colonies), §§ 113-116 (the Indians), §§ 117-121 (inter-colonial wars).

### § 76. The Causes and Preliminaries of the Revolution.

On the causes and events leading up to the Revolution, the best single collection is Niles, *Principles and Acts of the Revolution*. F. Moore, *Diary of the American Revolution* is a useful compilation from contemporary newspapers. Many extracts from the controversial literature in Moses Coit Tyler, *Literary History of the Revolution*.

On English opinion: Kendall, *Source-Book of English History*, §§ 119-121; Lee, *Source-Book* §§ 202-205, has extracts from Grenville, Chatham, Mansfield, and Burke on questions of taxation and colonial polity.

The most thoroughgoing and complete collection of documents on the period is MacDonald, *Select Charters*, Nos. 50-71. Professor MacDonald has taken pains to reprint the contemporary British statutes relating to the controversy with the colonies, from 1733 to 1775; he thus furnishes an opportunity for a judgment on the coercive measures preceding the Revolution, out of which grew the armed resistance in Massachusetts. See No. 50 (Molasses Act, 1733), No. 56 (Sugar Act, 1764), No. 57 (Stamp Act), No. 58 (Quartering Act, 1765), No. 60 (Declaratory Act, 1766), No. 61 (New York Assembly Act, 1767), No. 63 (Revenue

## The Causes of the Revolution 227

Act, 1767), No. 68 (Boston Port Act, 1774), No. 69 (Massachusetts Government Act, 1774), No. 70 (Administration of Justice Act, 1774), No. 71 (Quartering Act, 1774).

The Stamp Act is printed in full, except for the official verbiage, in *American History Leaflets*, No. 21.—Burke's speech on conciliation: in full, in *Riverside Literature Series*, No. 100; extracts in Lee, *Source-Book*, § 205; Colby, *Selections*, § 3.—Stamp Act Congress: MacDonald, *Select Charters*, No. 59; *Contemporaries*, II, § 141; Preston, *Documents*, 188.

The American side of the controversy is set forth in Otis's speech on the Writs of Assistance: *American Orations*, I, 11–17; Hart, *American History told by Contemporaries*, II, § 131.—Witherspoon's arguments: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 54.—Dickinson's *Farmer's Letters: Liberty Bell Leaflets*, No. 6; *Contemporaries*, II, § 149.—Benjamin Franklin's arguments: *Contemporaries*, II, §§ 133, 143.—General controversy and arguments for armed resistance: Caldwell, *Survey*, II, ch. iii; Mace, *Working Manual*, 137–190; *Contemporaries*, II, §§ 153–158.

Revolutionary riots and conflicts with British troops: *Contemporaries*, II, §§ 139, 148, 150, 151, 161, 167.—Boston Tea Party: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 68; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 53 (Tudor); *Contem-*

*poraries*, II, § 152 (Andrews).—Proceedings of Massachusetts and Virginia in protest: MacDonald, *Select Charters*, Nos. 65–67.—Action of Maryland: Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, § 184.

The official action of the British government with reference to the rebellion in the colonies is best set forth in MacDonald, *Select Charters*, No. 75 (New England Extradition Act), No. 79 (proclamation of rebellion), No. 80 (act prohibiting trade), Nos. 74, 78 (North's plan).

The first Continental Congress and its state papers appear in the collections as follows.—Declaration of Rights: MacDonald, *Select Charters*, No. 76; Preston, *Documents*, 192.—Association: MacDonald, *Select Charters*, No. 73; Preston, *Documents*, 199.—Petition to the king: MacDonald, *Select Charters*, No. 77.—Patrick Henry's speech: *American Orations*, I, 18–23.—Galloway's plan of union of 1774: *American History Leaflets*, No. 14.—Discussions of the Congress: Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, § 153 (John Adams), § 154 (Dunmore).

The largest number of extracts on the causes of the Revolution within one single cover will be found in *Contemporaries*, II, Part VI: §§ 130–133 (conditions of English control), §§ 134–137 (the West), §§ 138–144 (Stamp Act controversy), §§ 145–152 (revenue controversy), §§ 153–158 (issue of coercion).

## § 77. The Revolution, 1775-1783.

The first-hand material upon the conditions and progress of the Revolution is enormous in bulk. Among the more available journals and letters are the following: John Adams and Abigail Adams, *Familiar Letters* (Mrs. Adams's letters are admirable accounts of the spirit of the Revolution; extracts in Hart, *American History told by Contemporaries*, II, § 192); Alexander Graydon, *Memoirs* (the record of a soldier who writes in entertaining style; extracts in *Contemporaries*, II, § 170); Madam Riedesel, *Letters and Memoirs* (published in two English translations; very spirited; extracts in *Contemporaries*, II, § 197); Washington's letters (extremely interesting; the Sparks edition of his works, in twelve volumes, may be bought very cheap; extracts in *Contemporaries*, II, §§ 174, 195, 206). Speeches by various statesmen in Peabody, *American Patriotism*, and Johnston, *American Orations*. Many interesting papers in Stedman and Hutchinson, *Library of American Literature*, III.

The most important, and in many ways the most interesting, side of the Revolution for schools is the study of social conditions and of the political arguments for and against the Revolution. For this study, Niles, *Principles and Acts*, is very useful.—Washington at Cambridge: *Old South Leaf-*

lets, No. 47.—Patriotic verse in Hart, *Source-Book*, § 56 ("The American Patriot's Prayer"), § 70 (Hopkinson's "New Roof"); *Contemporaries*, II, § 159 (Paine's "Liberty Tree"), § 164 (Dwight's "Columbia"), § 171 ("Nathan Hale"), § 196 (Hopkinson's "Battle of the Kegs").—Loyalist verse: *Contemporaries*, II, § 182 (Stansbury's "Lords of the Main").—*Contemporaries*, II, Part vii, devotes 65 pages to the conditions of the Revolution: §§ 159–165 (the patriots), §§ 166–169 (the loyalists), §§ 170–177 (American forces), §§ 178–183 (British forces). Included in these chapters are extracts illustrating home life, woman's work, the camp, recruiting, foreign and home troops, privateering, the Hessians, André's career, etc., etc.

On the political development of the Revolution there is not much material in the collections except the Declaration of Independence. That immortal document—to be found also in many school textbooks of history and government—is reprinted in Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xiv; Preston, *Documents*, 210; MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 1; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 3. The Declaration is also printed in a facsimile, not very difficult to obtain.—Virginia instructions and Jefferson's original draft in *American History Leaflets*, No. 11.—Proceedings on the Declaration: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 58 (John Adams).—The oration of Samuel Adams on

independence, printed in *American Orations*, I, 24-38, was not written by him, but was put into his mouth by an English pamphleteer.

On the progress of the Revolution and its military events, the most important collection is Moore's *Diary of the American Revolution*, which contains a great many interesting incidents and papers.—Washington and Lafayette: *Old South Leaflets*, Nos 86, 97, 98.—Contemporary accounts of the battles of Lexington, Princeton, and Saratoga: Hart, *Source-Book*, §§ 57, 59, 61.—Systematic account of the progress of the Revolution: *Contemporaries*, II, §§ 184-190 (union and independence), §§ 191-198 (first stage of the war), §§ 199-204 (French alliance), §§ 205-210 (crisis in domestic affairs), §§ 211-214 (end of the war).—Text of the Peace of 1783: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 3; Preston, *Documents*, 232.—Extracts in regard to the Peace: *Contemporaries*, II, §§ 215-220.

On the organization of the colonial governments into states the collections have not much material.—Virginia Bill of Rights: Preston, *Documents*, 206; Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xiii.—Drafting of State constitutions: Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, § 187. Texts of the first state constitutions in Poore, *Federal and State Constitutions*.

English opinion on the Revolution is represented by Burke's speech on conciliation (in full, in *River-*

*side Literature Series*, No. 100; extracts in Lee, *Source-Book*, No. 205, and Colby, *Selections* § 3).—Chatham on coercion of the colonies: Lee, *Source-Book*, No. 203; Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, § 142.—Dr. Samuel Johnson: *Contemporaries*, II, § 156.—George IV: *Contemporaries*, II, § 158.—Fox on Washington: Colby, *Selections*, § 105.

### § 78. The Confederation.

The Articles of Confederation are widely printed: convenient texts may be found in Preston, *Documents*, 218; MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 2; Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xv; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 2; F. A. Cleveland's edition (rearranged for class use); *American History Leaflets*, No. 20 (an exact text taken from the manuscript rolls in the State Department).

Of the various plans preliminary to the final Articles, Franklin and Dickinson's are printed in *American History Leaflets*, No. 20.—On previous plans of Union, including that of the Albany Congress, see § 63 above.—Discussion of the Articles of Confederation: Hart, *American History told by Contemporaries*, II, §§ 189, 190, 205, 209.

The history of the conditions of the Confederation is set forth in Caldwell, *Survey*, ch. ii, §§ 74–86. Various interesting letters are printed as ap-



pendices to George Bancroft, *History of the Constitution* (2 vol. edition).—On the discussions in Congress and the inadequacy of the Confederation: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 65; *Contemporaries*, III, § 37 (discussion of the revenue plan), § 38 (Newburg Addresses), §§ 39–41 (criticisms by Read, Madison, and Morse).

The most important function of the Confederation was its legislation on new territories, in regard to which many interesting documents and letters have been reprinted. Donaldson, *Public Domain*, contains many documents carelessly printed.—On the territorial question in general: Caldwell, *Survey*, ch. iii.—Text of the territorial ordinance of 1784: *American History Leaflets*, No. 32; Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, § 43.—Text of the ordinance of 1787: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 4; Preston, *Documents*, 240; *Liberty Bell Leaflets*, No. 9; Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xvi; *American History Leaflets*, No. 32; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 13.—Internal history of the Northwest Ordinance: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 67; *Contemporaries*, III, § 46.—Journals and letters of Washington on the Western country: *Old South Leaflets*, Nos. 15, 16, 41.—George Rogers Clark at Vincennes: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 43; Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, § 201.—On Western territory in general: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 40 (Cutler's description).—On public lands:

*Contemporaries*, III, § 42 (Tom Paine's discussion).—Texts of the Grayson ordinance of 1785 and other related documents: *American History Leaflets*, No. 32; *Contemporaries*, III, § 44 (State of Franklin). Frontier and boundary questions: *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 45-47.

General questions of trade, commerce, and foreign relations during the Confederacy are treated in *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 48-54.

### § 79. The Federal Constitution.

Suggestions that the Constitution ought to be amended had been circulating freely ever since 1781. On this subject some reprints will be found in Elliot, *Debates*, I, and Hart, *Source-Book*, § 68. *Contemporaries*, III, ch. ix, is devoted to this subject, and includes papers by Hamilton (§ 54), Washington (§ 57), Lincoln (§ 58), Jay (§ 59).—Various propositions for the amendment of the Articles of Confederation: *American History Leaflets*, No. 28.—On the spirit and work of the Federal Convention: Mace, *Working Manual*, 189-217; Caldwell, *Survey*, ch. iv, pp. 86-96.—Extracts from the debates in the Convention: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 70; Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 64, 66.—General character of the work of the Convention: *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 60, 61, 62, 67.

## The Federal Constitution 235

Reprints of the text of the Constitution are hundreds in number. Some of the most convenient are: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 5; Preston, *Documents*, 251; F. A. Cleveland's edition, (rearranged for class use); *Old South Leaflets*, No. 1; Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xvii (with contemporary and later comment). A convenient text, carefully compared with the original manuscript rolls, is *American History Leaflets*, No. 8. For the study and use of the Constitution, schools ought to have copies of some of the leaflet editions, sufficient to provide each pupil with a text.

On the Federal Convention itself the standard authority is Elliot, *Debates*, I (*Journal of the Convention*) and V (*Madison's Notes*). This is the most important source on the history and the meaning of the Constitution; it is reprinted also in Gilpin's *Madison Papers*, and in a special edition edited by E. H. Scott, for college use. (Chicago, Scott, 1893.) It contains the only extensive minutes of the debates in the convention, though there are a few other accounts by members:

Lansing and Yates's minutes are printed in Elliot, *Debates*, I, which includes also letters and addresses by Luther Martin, Edmund Randolph, Elbridge Gerry, John Jay, and others. Sydney George Fisher, *Evolution of the Constitution of the United States* (Philadelphia, Lippincott, 1897), culls freely

from the previous English and colonial state papers to show the origin of the clauses of the Constitution. The notes of William Pierce, a member of the convention, have recently been published in the *American Historical Review*, III, 310-330 (extracts in Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, § 63). Interesting letters not elsewhere printed, will be found in George Bancroft, *History of the Constitution*, II Appendix.

The ratification of the Constitution is as interesting and important as the work of the Convention. Elliot, *Debates*, II-IV, is made up of the proceedings in the state conventions. There is also a separate volume on Pennsylvania, edited by J. B. McMaster. The reprints edited by Paul Leicester Ford, entitled *Essays on the Constitution* and *Pamphlets on the Constitution*, are extremely useful, but rather expensive for a school library. The letters of Washington and Madison are very suggestive on this period. The most noted document is *The Federalist*, written by Hamilton, Jay and Madison, which reflects public sentiment in New York; a convenient edition, which would be very serviceable in a school library, is E. H. Scott's (Chicago, Scott, 1898) which includes not only *The Federalist*, but extensive selections from Ford's *Essays* and *Pamphlets*.—Extracts from *The Federalist: Old South Leaflets*, No. 12.

## The Federal Administration 237

Speeches by Hamilton and Madison: *American Orations*, I, 39-71.—Washington's letters: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 99.—Objections to and arguments on the Constitution: Mace, *Working Manual*, 217-228; Caldwell, *Survey*, ch. v. Hart, *Source-Book*, § 68 (Mason), § 69 (Smith; one of the very best speeches ever made on the Constitution). *Contemporaries*, III, ch. xi, is devoted to ratification, and includes extracts from discussions by Lee, Winthrop, Brackenridge, Higginson, Hamilton, Lansing, Monroe, and the North Carolina Convention.

### § 80. Organization of the Government and the Federal Administration.

From this point on, three official collections of documents will be found serviceable, all of which ought to be in a school library: *Messages and Papers of the Presidents*, edited by James D. Richardson; *Digest of the International Law of the United States*, edited by Francis Wharton; and *Treaties and Conventions of the United States*. Throughout every administration down to the present time, the state papers of the presidents will be found included in Richardson's edition. Copious extracts from the diplomatic correspondence of the United States are to be found in Wharton, of which a new edition, edited by John B. Moore, is prom-

ised; but the first edition can be bought for about \$3 a set, and is sufficient for school use. *Treaties and Conventions* contains all the formal treaties of the United States with foreign nations from 1789 to 1887. Schools that have a set of *Annals of Congress* will find in it much material, not only the reports of speeches in Congress, but also the statutes and many diplomatic papers.

The transition period from the Federal Convention to the completion of a well-ordered federal government affords an excellent opportunity for a study of social, political, and economic conditions of the period following the Revolution. Some of these questions are treated in the materials on the Confederation (§ 78 above). The letters of John Adams and his wife Abigail Adams are among the best sources on the social conditions of the times, Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, Part II, devotes more than 100 pages to these questions: §§ 10-18 (social conditions, including town and country life, slavery, social festivities, etc.), §§ 19-24 (economic conditions, with accounts of agriculture, manufacture, and trade, including the cotton culture), §§ 25-30 and Hart, *Source-Book*, § 64 (political conditions, including discussions by Graydon, Pownall, Chastellux, Franklin, Sam Adams, and Crèvecoeur), §§ 31-36 and Hart, *Source-Book*, § 66 (the West, with extracts from Cooper, May, Rufus Putnam,

## The Federal Administration 239

John Pope, Imlay, Freneau, and Brissot. — Boundary questions of the time: Caldwell, *Territorial Development*, ch. ii.—Brissot de Warville is perhaps the most serviceable traveller of this period.

On the organization of the government under the Constitution, 1789–1793: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 10 (Washington's inaugural), No. 38 (Lee on Washington), No. 65 (Washington to the churches), No. 76 (Washington on universities). The best book on the spirit and proceedings of Congress is Maclay, *Journal*, which has very entertaining material on the period 1789–1791 (extracts in Hart, *Source-Book*, § 71; *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 77, 79).

Extracts from Hamilton's reports on finance: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 6, 8, 9; Taussig, *State Papers and Speeches on the Tariff* (Cambridge, Harvard University, 1893), 1–107 (full text of the "Report on Manufactures"); *Old South Leaflets*, No. 74; *Contemporaries*, III, § 82.—Discussion of finance: *Contemporaries*, III, § 76.—Early tariff debates: Taussig, *State Papers and Speeches on the Tariff*; Gibbs, *Administrations of Washington and Adams* (full on financial questions); Hart, *Source-Book*, § 72; *Contemporaries*, III, § 78.—Compromise on the federal capital: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 73; *Contemporaries*, III, § 80.—Slavery memorials: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 7.—Organization of parties: Hart, *Source-Book*,

§§ 77, 82.—Washington's "Farewell Address": *Old South Leaflets*, No. 4.

On the rise of political parties: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 10-11 (Jefferson and Hamilton on implied powers); *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 81, 83-91, including § 81 (letters of office seekers), § 85 (Jefferson on Hamilton), § 86 (Hamilton on Jefferson), § 87 (extracts from a partisan newspaper).—On the foreign relations of the Washington and Adams administrations: C. D. Hazen, *American Opinion on the French Revolution*; MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 13 (Neutrality Proclamation), No. 14 (Jay treaty), No. 16 (Adams on negotiations with France); *American Orations*, I, 84-111 (Gallatin on the Jay treaty), 112-130, and Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, § 97 (Fisher Ames).—Extracts from the "X, Y, Z Correspondence": University of Pennsylvania, *Translations and Reprints*, VIII, No. 2; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 75; *Contemporaries*, III, § 99.—Extended articles on foreign relations in general: Hart, *Source-Book*, §§ 74, 76 (cases of impressment); *Contemporaries*, III, § 84 (Pownall), and ch. xiv ("Foreign Relations").

The Alien and Sedition Acts and their counterpart, the Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions, make the most important episode in Adams's administration.—John Adams's inaugural: *Old South Leaflets*,



No. 103.—Texts of the statutes: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 16–23; Preston, *Documents*, 277–298; *American History Leaflets*, No. 15 (texts from the manuscript rolls).—Discussion of the question: *American Orations*, I, 131–143 (Nicholas); *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 101, 104.

On the feeling of the Federalists and the election of Jefferson: *Contemporaries*, III, ch. xv.

## § 81. The Administrations of Jefferson and Madison.

On the Jeffersonian principles of government in general: Caldwell, *Great Legislators*, No. 1 (Gallatin); Hart, *Source-Book*, § 77 (Dwight's criticism); *Contemporaries*, III, § 107 (question of removals), § 110 (Irving's satire).—Jefferson's inaugural address, with a statement of his principles: *American Orations*, I, 155–163; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 104 (also address of 1805). Extracts from the address of 1801 in *Contemporaries*, III, § 106.—Jefferson's message on Burr: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 25.—Messages and diplomatic papers will, of course, be found in Richardson, *Messages*; Wharton, *Digest*, and in *Treaties and Conventions*. H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, No. 1, contains some state resolutions from 1801 to 1809. Dwight's

*Travels* are serviceable on social and economic conditions throughout the period.

On territorial expansion as reflected in the annexation of Louisiana: Caldwell, *Survey*, ch. iv.—Louisiana treaty: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 24.—*Old South Leaflets*, No. 105; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 78; *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 111–116; B. F. Shambaugh, *Documentary Material relating to the History of Iowa*, I, 1–29.

On Oregon: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 44 (Jefferson's instructions to Lewis); *Contemporaries*, III, § 115 (extracts from Lewis and Clark's report); Hart, *Source-Book*, § 80 (Gass's report).—Constitution of the new state of Ohio: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 14.

On foreign policy and neutral trade: Hart, *Source-Book*, §§ 79–81; *Contemporaries*, III, ch. xviii. These extracts include narratives of impressments, the Chesapeake-Leopard affair and questions of neutral trade.—Text of the embargo and non-intercourse acts: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 27, 28.—Berlin Decree: Colby, *Selections*, § 110.—Discussion: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 81; *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 121, 122.—Barbary wars: *Contemporaries*, III, § 108.

## § 82. The War of 1812.

There are few good contemporary narratives of the War of 1812; the best of them will be found represented in the collections.—Messages giving the official causes of the war: Richardson, *Messages* (extract in MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 29; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 83).—Causes of the violation of neutral rights: Wharton, *Digest*, §§ 359–361, 388.—Declaration of war: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 30.

On the war in general: Mace, *Working Manual*, 235–240; Hart, *Source-Book*, §§ 82–86 (including narratives of a naval victory, the capture of Washington, and the battle of New Orleans); *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 123–127 (speeches of Quincy and Clay, capture of the Java, attack on New Orleans). Quincy's famous secession speech and Clay's speech on the war are also reprinted in *American Orations*, I, 180–204, 205–215.—John Randolph on the Militia Bill: *American Orations*, I, 164–179.

Attitude of the States toward the war: H. V. Ames, *State Documents*, No. 2.—T. Dwight, Hartford Convention: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 32.

Text of the treaty of peace: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 31.—Discussion of the treaty: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 87 (Gallatin); *Contemporaries*, III, § 128 (John Quincy Adams), § 129 (Cushing).

§ 83. The Period of National Organization,  
1815-1829.

In this period the main questions are social and economic, the two dramatic incidents being the Missouri Compromise of 1820 and the Monroe Doctrine. Official messages are in Richardson, *Messages*; statutes in the appendices to the *Annals of Congress*.

On the social conditions of the time. T. Dwight, *Travels*; Hart, *Source-Book*, ch. xiv; Josiah Quincy, *Figures of the Past*. The West is especially treated in Hart, *Source-Book*, § 90 (Flint), § 92 (Birkbeck), § 93 (Fearon); *Contemporaries*, III, § 137 (Brackenridge), § 138 (Birkbeck), § 139 (Heckewelder), § 140 (Cartwright), § 141 (Shirreff).

The great economic movement is set forth in Caldwell, *Survey*, ch. x; MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 33 (Bank Act of 1816); *Contemporaries*, III, § 130 (tariff), § 131 (internal improvements), § 132 (state banking).—Livingston's account of the first steamboat: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 108.

Foreign relations: Caldwell, *Territorial Development*, ch. v (Florida); Caldwell, *Great Legislators*, No. 2 (John Quincy Adams); MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 34 (Florida treaty); *Contemporaries*, III, § 134 (commerce), § 143 (Adams on the treaty of 1819), § 144 (government of Florida).

On the political theories of the time, Webster's Bunker Hill oration is excellent : reprinted in *Longmans' English Classics* No. 5.

The Missouri Compromise is set forth in the three famous amendments of Tallmadge, Taylor, and Thomas, the Conference Report, the Missouri Act, the constitution of Missouri, and the resolution for admission ; all reproduced in MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 35-41.—Texts of Statutes : Shambaugh, *Documentary History of Iowa*, I, No. 2. Speeches on the Compromise : *American Orations*, II, 33-101.—Discussion : Hart, *Source-Book*, § 91 ; *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 135, 136.

The great constitutional cases before the Supreme Court of this time are best studied in C. E. Boyd, *Cases on American Constitutional Law* (Chicago, 1898), as follows : Pp. 26-40, 308-323 (doctrine of implied powers, in the Hylton and McCulloch cases, extracts from the McCulloch cases are also reprinted in Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, § 133 ; and in Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xix), pp. 172-204 (Regulations of commerce, in cases of *Gibbons vs. Ogden* and *Brown vs. Maryland*), 395-466 (doctrine of contracts), 583-602 (Indians and territorial status), 603-646 (jurisdiction of national courts). Ames, *State Documents on Federal Relations*, No. 3, reprints State protests against the Bank, etc.

On the Monroe Doctrine and the attitude of the

United States toward Latin-American powers there is now abundant reprinted material.—Extracts from cognate documents: *American History Leaflets*, No. 4; Hill, *Liberty Documents*, Ch. xx (with contemporary comment).—Text of the messages: Richardson, *Messages* (extracts in MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 43; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 56; *Contemporaries*, III, § 147).—Discussions of the causes and intent of the doctrine: *Contemporaries*, III, § 142 (Holy Alliance), § 145 (Russian ukase), § 146 (Bullock on Mexico), § 148 (Clay), § 149 (Cuba), § 150 (Panama Congress).

#### §84. Jacksonian Democracy and Administration, 1820–1841.

Jackson's administration is interesting both for the personality of the statesmen of the time and for the great questions which it brings to the front. Official messages are in Richardson, *Messages*; extracts on diplomacy in Wharton, *Digest*, treaties, in *Treaties and Conventions*.

On the social conditions of the time the best sources are Bacourt, *Souvenirs of a Diplomat*; Charles Dickens, *American Notes* (prejudiced but not malicious); F. J. Grund, *The Americans*. Short pieces in *Contemporaries*, III, § 152 (Sydney Smith), § 155 (Mrs. Trollope). Tocqueville's *Democracy in*

*America* is the best contemporary sketch of the social and political life of the time (extracts in *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 156, 163); Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, covers this whole period. Mrs. Trollope, *Domestic Manners of the Americans*, really describes frontier conditions. Horace Mann's plea for free schools: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 109.

On the tariff controversy: Taussig, *State Papers and Speeches on the Tariff*, 317-385 (Webster's speech of 1824), 252-316 (Clay's speech of 1824), 108-213 (Gallatin's report on free trade, 1831).

The controversy upon which the collected documentary material is most abundant in this period is the nullification episode, especially the debate between Webster and Hayne. The important papers on nullification are in Ames, *State Documents and Federal Relations*, No. 4; *American History Leaflets*, No. 30; Preston, *Documents*, 299 (ordinance of nullification); MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 44-45 (state protests), No. 55 (Jackson's proclamation), No. 56 (Force Act).—In *American Orations*, I, 303-319, we have Calhoun's arguments, and also in Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, § 161.—The Webster-Hayne debate in *Congressional Debates*; parts reprinted, in *Riverside Literature Series*, Nos. 121-122; Maynard, *English Classics Series*, Nos. 75, 152; *American Orations*, I, 233-302; *American History Leaflets*, No. 30; Caldwell,

*Great Legislators*, No. 4 (Webster), No. 5 (Calhoun); MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 47-49. Extracts in *Contemporaries*, III, §§ 159, 161.—Separate orations of Webster: Maynard, *English Classics Series*, No. 51 (on Adams and Jefferson), No. 44 (Bunker Hill oration).

On the general principles of the Jacksonian administration: Benton, *Thirty Years View*; Caldwell, *Great Legislators*, Nos. 2, 3.—Extracts from Major Jack Downing: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 102; *Contemporaries*, III, § 160.—Removals from office: *Contemporaries*, III, § 158.—Jackson's statement of principles: *Contemporaries*, III, § 152.—Extract from De Tocqueville: *Contemporaries*, III, § 163.—Calhoun's *Government of the United States*, 1849: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 106.

On the bank controversy: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 46, 50-52, 54, 62, 65; *American History Leaflets*, No. 24.—On the deposit controversy: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 57-61, 64 (Jackson's protest), 66, 75.—Benton's resolution for expunging: *American Orations*, I, 320-334.—Specie circular: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 67.

On internal improvements and the means of intercourse: Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, § 165 (railroads), § 166 (Fanny Kemble), § 167 (Dickens by



## Slavery and Anti-slavery 249

stage), § 168 (the telegraph).—On public lands: Donaldson, *Public Domain*.

### § 85. Slavery and Anti-slavery, 1835–1845.

Although the slavery question had a connection with American politics from 1774 to 1861, the most convenient time to consider the actual conditions of slavery and the efforts to do away with it, is the period 1835–1845, when the sectional issue was first distinctly raised. Publications of material on slavery life may be found through foot-notes and special bibliographies in W. H. Siebert, *Underground Railroad* (New York, Macmillan, 1898), M. G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, M. E. Locke, *Anti-Slavery* (Boston, Ginn, 1891, 1901).

Upon the actual conditions of slavery and plantation life the best books are those by F. L. Olmsted, published in two forms: first, three successive volumes, issued separately under the titles *Journey in the Seaboard Slave States*, *Journey through Texas* and *Journey in the Back Country*; second, a single work in two volumes published under the title *The Cotton Kingdom*, made up chiefly of parts of the other series. Smedes, *Southern Planter*, is an excellent account, from the slavery side, of a kind-hearted slave master on his plantation. Out of many travels in the Southern States perhaps J. S.

Buckingham, *Slave States of America*, is most to the point. A variety of material in slavery will be found in Caldwell, *Survey*, ch. vii.

Narratives written by slaves are reprinted in part in Hart, *Source-Book*, § 98 (Charity Bowery), § 100, (Henry Box Brown). *Contemporaries*, III, ch. xxvi, is on the actual conditions of slavery: § 169 (Virginia Convention); § 170 (Fred Douglass; § 171 (free negroes); § 173 (Lyell's cheerful view).—Poems on the subject: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 99, and *Contemporaries*, III, § 178 (Whittier); § 172 (Pierpont's "North Star").—Favorable views of slavery: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 95 (McDuffie), § 113 (A. H. Stephens); *Contemporaries*, III, § 173 (Lyell), § 175 (Dew); IV, § 25 ("South Side Adams"), § 26 (Stringfellow), § 27 (Pollard). Governor McDuffie's message in defence of slavery in full is in *American History Leaflets*, No. 10.—A slave auction, as described by the *New York Tribune*; *Contemporaries*, IV, § 28.

On the abolition side, Garrison's principles: *Old South Leaflets*, Nos. 78, 79; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 96 (mob of 1835); *Contemporaries*, III, § 174.—Theodore Parker: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 80.—Birney: *Contemporaries*, III, § 177.—Chase: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 101.—Slade: *Contemporaries*, III, § 181.—Accounts of anti-slavery meetings and Societies: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 81; MacDonald,

## Crisis of Territorial Slavery 251

*Select Documents*, No. 63 (Constitution of the Anti-Slavery Society); Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, § 176. —The slave trade: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 97 (Featherstonhaugh); *Contemporaries*, III, § 179 (Slaves at Sea), § 182 (Amistad Case).

Some of the great anti-slavery orations are reprinted in *American Orations*, II, 102-114, 219-267 (Wendell Phillips), 115-122 (John Quincy Adams). Extracts from Adams's speeches are also reprinted in Caldwell, *Great Legislators*, No. 2 and *Contemporaries*, III, § 184.

The question of fugitive slaves is treated in Hart, *Source-Book*, § 100 (Henry Box Brown); *Contemporaries*, III, § 183 (Cochran). For materials on the acute stage of the fugitive slave controversy just before the Civil War, see § 86 below.

### § 86. The Crisis of Territorial Slavery, 1845-1860.

The period from 1844 to the Civil War includes the questions of the annexation of Texas, the Mexican War, the disposition of California, the Compromise of 1850, the Kansas-Nebraska Act, the civil war in Kansas, the Dred Scott decision and the John Brown raid. Extended materials on these subjects may be found through Channing and Hart, *Guide*, §§ 196-203. The best single collec-

tion on the period is Abraham Lincoln, *Complete Works*. E. L. Pierce, *Life of Charles Sumner*, is very rich in extracts from interesting contemporary material. Official messages (very important) in Richardson's *Messages*. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, is full on many of the episodes in the slavery contest. For extracts from speeches, Caldwell, *Great Legislators*, is serviceable: No. 3 (Clay), No. 4 (Webster), No. 5 (Calhoun), No. 6 (Sumner), No. 7 (Douglas), No. 8 (Seward). Many speeches in full or in extensive selections are in Johnston's *American Orations* and in Peabody's *American Patriotism*. Additional materials are enumerated in Channing and Hart, *Guide*, §§ 193-203.

On the annexation of Texas there is material in Caldwell, *Territorial Development*, ch. vi; the joint resolution is printed in MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 71. Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, ch. xxix, is given up to this question: § 185 (Houston), § 186 (anti-slavery protest), § 187 (Clay's Raleigh letter), § 188 (Calhoun), § 189 (Benton).

The fullest collections on the Mexican War are in MacDonald, *Select Documents*, and Hart, *Contemporaries*.—Polk's official message: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 72; *Contemporaries*, IV, § 10.—Polk's private diary: Extracts in *Contemporaries*, IV, § 14.—Conditions of Mexico: *Contemporaries*, IV, § 8.—Declaration of war: MacDonald, *Select*

## Crisis of Territorial Slavery 253

*Documents*, No. 73.—Corwin's speech in opposition: *Contemporaries*, IV, § 11.—Lowell's satires in his *Biglow Papers*, first series: extracts in Hart, *Source-Book*, § 104; *Contemporaries*, IV, § 15.—Military movements: *Contemporaries*, IV, §§ 12-13 (U. S. Grant and Winfield Scott).—Grant's *Memoirs* are fascinating on the Mexican campaign.—Treaty of Peace, 1848: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 76.

On the annexation of California: Caldwell, *Territorial Development*, ch. vii.—Conditions of California before annexation: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 105 (Colton); *Contemporaries*, IV, § 18 ("a Forty-Niner"). Dana, *Two Years before the Mast*, is one of the best accounts (extracts in *Contemporaries*, IV, § 7). On the discovery of gold: *Sherman Letters*, 40-47.

On the exploration of the West and the Oregon question: Irving's *Astoria* and *Captain Bonneville*, Farnham's *Travels*, Fremont's *Exploring Expedition* and Burnett's *Recollections of an Old Pioneer*. Parkman, *Oregon Trail*, is the best single book on the Indians of the Far West at this date. Brief accounts in *Old South Leaflets*, No. 45 (Fremont); Caldwell, *Territorial Development*, ch. viii; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 103 (Parkman).—Treaty with England, 1846: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 74. For criticism of the untrustworthy sources from which the history of the Oregon question has been gen-

erally drawn for school text-books: Bourne, *The Legend of Marcus Whitman*, in *Essays in Historical Criticism*.

On the isthmus question: *American History Leaflets*, No. 34.—Clayton-Bulwer treaty of 1850: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 77.

The speeches on the Compromise of 1850 are very numerous, and many of them have been reprinted.—Wilmot on his Proviso: Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, § 16.—Walker, on extension of the Constitution: *Contemporaries*, IV, § 17.—Clay: *American Orations*, I, 202–218; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 106.—Calhoun: *American Orations*, II, 123–160; Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, § 19.—Webster: *American Orations*, II, 161–201; Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, § 20. Whittier's poem on Webster's speech is in *Contemporaries*, IV, § 21.—Lowell, on Dough-faces: *Contemporaries*, IV, § 15.—Sumner: *American Orations*, II, 268–340.—Seward: Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, § 22.—The significant parts of the Compromise statutes are in MacDonald, *Select Documents*, Nos. 78–83.

Accounts of some of the famous fugitive-slave cases: C. F. Adams, *Richard Henry Dana*; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 107 (Shadrach); *Contemporaries*, IV, §§ 29, 32 (Underground Railroad), § 30 (Christiana), § 31 (Burns).—Text of a personal-liberty act: *Contemporaries*, IV, § 33.

## Crisis of Territorial Slavery 255

On the Kansas-Nebraska Act and its consequences, MacDonald, *Select Documents* and Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, ch. vi, have the fullest extracts. —Douglas's reports: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 85; *American History Leaflets*, No. 17. —Dixon's and Sumner's amendments, in MacDonald, *Select Documents*, §§ 86, 87; Dixon's and Chase's, in *American History Leaflets*, No. 17. —"Appeal of the Independent Democrats": *American History Leaflets*, No. 17. —Douglas's defence: *American Orations*, III, 50-87; Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, § 34. Criticisms and discussions: *American Orations*, III, 3-49 (Chase and Everett); Hart, *Source-Book*, § 108 (Benton); *Contemporaries*, IV, § 35 (Julian). —Text of the Ostend Manifesto of 1854 relative to Cuba: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 89; *American History Leaflets*, No. 2.

The question of the settlement of Kansas is illustrated by extracts from the report of the committee of 1856, in MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 90. —Lecompton Constitution (text), in MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 92; Walker's denunciation, in Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, § 40. —Speech of Sumner: *American Orations*, III, 88-120; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 83. —Preston Brooks's Defence: *American Orations*, III, 122-128. —Narratives of experiences in Kansas: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 109 (Ladd); *Contemporaries*, IV, § 36 (Mrs. Robinson), § 37

(Lucy Larcom's poem), § 38 (Scott on pro-slavery), § 39 (Gladstone).

Significant extracts from the Dred Scott decision will be found in MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 91; Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xxi; *American History Leaflets*, No. 23; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 110; *Contemporaries*, IV, § 42.—Extracts from the Missouri court documents: *Contemporaries*, IV, § 41.—Benton's scathing criticism: *Contemporaries*, IV, § 43.

The Lincoln-Douglas debates are important as the joining of the issue on the question of slavery. Significant extracts are in *American Orations*, III, 154-194; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 85; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 111; *Contemporaries*, IV, § 44. The most convenient full report is in Lincoln, *Works*, I.—Seward's speech on "the irrepressible conflict": *American Orations*, III, 195-207 (extracts in Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, § 45).—Ben Wade on "niggers for the niggerless": *Contemporaries*, IV, § 46.

John Brown's raid, many documents in Frank Sanborn, *John Brown* and James Redpath, *John Brown*. Brown's own explanation: *Old South Leaflets*, No. 84; Hart, *Source-Book*, § 112; *Contemporaries*, IV, § 48.—R. E. Lee's account: *Contemporaries*, IV, § 47.

On the final issue of slavery just before the Civil War: *American Orations*, III, 129-153 (Benjamin's



speech on property); Hart, *Source-Book*, § 113 (A. H. Stephens); *Contemporaries*, IV, ch. vii.—For general material on this period: Mace, *Working Manual*, 248–262.

### §87. The Causes and Beginnings of the Civil War.

The best accounts of the conditions and discussions of 1860–61 will be found in Lincoln *Complete Works*, in the *Sherman Letters* (especially those of the General); in W. H. Russell *My Diary, North and South* (Russell was in Washington and Charleston in April, 1861). Many pertinent documents in *Appleton's Annual Encyclopædia* for 1861. Jefferson Davis and Alexander H. Stephens wrote books in defence of secession.

The best general collection of the speeches and discussions at the outbreak of the Civil War is in *American Orations*, III, 230–329, the northern side represented by Hale, Wade, and Cox; the southern side, by Iverson, Crittenden, Toombs, and Jefferson Davis. Buchanan's messages in Richardson's *Messages*.

On the social and economic conditions of the two sections, see §§ 83, 84 above.—For a view of the poor whites: *Contemporaries*, IV, § 23.—Extracts from *Uncle Tom's Cabin: Contemporaries*, IV, § 24.

Discussion of the influence of that book : *Old South Leaflets*, No. 82.—For Southern defences of slavery, see § 83 above ; also A. H. Stephen's "Corner Stone" speech, in Hart, *Source-Book*, § 113 ; and in *American Orators*.

The election of 1860 is the subject of *Contemporaries*, IV, ch. viii : §§ 49, 50 (Halstead on the Charleston and Chicago Conventions), § 51 (threats of secession), § 52 (John Sherman).

The most important collected materials for the crisis of 1860–61 are in MacDonald, *Select Documents*, and Hart, *Contemporaries* ; some briefer extracts in Mace *Working Manual*, 261–263, 278–287.—Various propositions for constitutional amendments : MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 93 (Crittenden), No. 95 (Peace Congress), No. 96 (Corwin).—Discussions of compromise : *Contemporaries*, IV, § 63 (Weed), § 64 (Buchanan), § 65 (Wade), § 66 (Lincoln), § 68 (Peace Congress), § 69 (Crittenden's defence).

The Southern side of the controversy in 1861 is well set forth in Reuben Davis, *Recollections of Mississippi* (extract in *Contemporaries*, IV, § 58).—The South Carolina "Declaration of Causes" is the most complete statement of the Southern side : Preston, *Documents*, 305 ; *American History Leaflets*, No. 12.—Confederate constitution : MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 97 ; *American Annual Cyclopædia* for 1861.

The most significant documents on actual secession are the ordinances of secession: MacDonald, *Select Documents*, No. 94; *American History Leaflets*, No. 12; Preston, *Documents*, 304.—Discussion of secession: *Contemporaries*, IV, § 51 ("Common Sense"), § 54 (Toombs), § 55 (Wigfall).—Arguments against secession: § 53 (Stevens), § 56 (Parker), § 57 (Brownell's satire).

On the outbreak of secession: *Contemporaries*, IV, § 58 (Mississippi), § 59 (South Carolina), § 60 (Oliver Wendell Holmes' lament), § 61 (Alabama), § 62 (Jefferson Davis).—Contemporary accounts of the attack on Fort Sumter: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 114 (Doubleday); *Contemporaries*, IV, § 70 (cabinet discussions), § 71 (Southern documents), § 72 (Foster and Anderson).—Arousing of the North: Lowell, *Biglow Papers*, Second Series, reflects the sentiment of the North. Hart, *Source-Book*, § 115 (Dix); *Contemporaries*, IV, § 73 (Mrs. Livermore), § 74 ("New Gospel of Peace"), § 75 (Artemus Ward), § 79 (Everett).

### § 88. The Civil War, 1861–1865.

The documents of the period will be found most conveniently in MacDonald, *Select Statutes*; McPherson, *History of the Rebellion*, and *American Annual Cyclopædia*; the great *War Records* in 130

volumes are of course not convenient for school use. The best general sources available for schools upon this period are the following: Abraham Lincoln, *Works* (the most valuable single contribution to the history of the period); U. S. Grant, *Memoirs* (chiefly military, but not technical); W. T. Sherman, *Memoirs* (very interesting and easy to understand); John Sherman and W. T. Sherman, *Letters* (one of the best statements of the period as seen by two able men with great opportunities). The *American Annual Cyclopædia* for the years 1861, 1862, 1863, 1864, 1865, contains a large number of contemporary letters, proclamations, messages, etc. The president's messages will be found in Lincoln's *Works* and also in Richardson's *Messages*. Putnam's *Rebellion Record* has many interesting contemporary accounts of the war. E. H. Pollard, *Lost Cause* is a southern history of the war; see also Jefferson Davis, *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government*, and Alexander H. Stephens, *War Between the States*.

For bibliography, the best secondary books with footnotes are J. F. Rhodes, *History of the United States*; James Schouler, *History of the United States*; J. C. Ropes, *Story of the Civil War* (unfortunately interrupted at the end of the second volumes). Channing and Hart, *Guide*, §§ 204-214, has a classified bibliography on the Civil War.

Lincoln's state papers and declarations are the most valuable material on the civil side of the war.—Lincoln's speeches before 1861: "House divided against itself," (1858) in *American Orations*, III, 168-183, and *Contemporaries*, IV, § 44; Cooper Institute speech, 1860, in *Old South Leaflets*, No. 107; speech on compromise, 1860-61, in *Contemporaries*, IV, § 66.—On the war and slavery, 1864: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 124.—On liberty, 1864: *Contemporaries*, IV, § 101.

Contemporary impressions of Lincoln: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 111 (Douglas), § 120 (Carpenter), § 126 (James Russell Lowell), *Contemporaries*, IV, § 50 (Halstead), § 52 (Sherman), § 96 (W. H. Russell), § 97 (Seward).

Selections from Lincoln's principal state papers are reprinted in *American History Leaflets*, Nos. 18, 26; *Riverside Literature Series*, No. 32; Maynard, *English Classics Series*, No. 131.

Text of the Emancipation Proclamation: Preston, *Documents*, 313; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 11; and many other places.—Contemporary accounts of the Proclamation: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 120 (Carpenter), § 124 (Lincoln); *Contemporaries*, IV, § 128 (Chase).

The best collection of speeches on the Civil War period is *American Orations*, IV, 3-128, which includes speeches of Lincoln, Jefferson Davis, Ste-

phens, Breckinridge, Baker, Vallandigham, and others.

The important Supreme Court cases of the period may be found in Boyd, *Cases on American Constitutional Law*, 642-350 (prize cases), 351-371 (Milligan case), 56-97 (taxes), 563-570 (Tarble's case).

The social, political, and economic condition of the North and South, at the outbreak of the Civil War and during the struggle, are an interesting part of the study of the events of the war. James Russell Lowell, *Biglow Papers*, second series, is an admirable satire on secession. The motive, standards, and life of both sides are treated in detail in Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, ch. xiii (The Northern People); ch. xiv (The Southern People); ch. xv (The Northern Armies); ch. xvi (The Southern Armies), ch. xvii (War-Time Government").—On the recruiting of troops and camp life: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 117; *Contemporaries*, IV, §§ 77, 84, 88, 94.—On aid to the sick and wounded: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 118; *Contemporaries*, IV, § 89, 92.

Soldiers under fire: Hart, *Source-Book*, §§ 116, 117, 121, 123, 125; *Contemporaries*, IV, §§ 86, 87, 90, 95.—Women in the war: Hart, *Source-Book*, § 122; *Contemporaries*, IV, §§ 73, 78, 81.—War songs: *Contemporaries* IV, §§ 60, 78, 85, 91, 93.

On the internal government of the Confederacy during the Civil War, Hart's two collections con-

tain some useful materials : *Source-Book*, § 113 (Stephens) ; *Contemporaries*, IV, § 80 (Congress), § 82 (paper money), § 83 (" Rebel War Clerk ").—Southern life : *Contemporaries*, IV, §§ 80–83.

The diplomacy of the Civil War is best traced through the footnotes to Frederic Bancroft, *William H. Seward*, II, and to Rhodes, *History of the United States*, III and IV. A few extracts are in *Contemporaries*, IV, § 97 (Seward's April recommendation), § 98 (John Bright), § 99 (Trent affair), § 100 (Slidell in France). Many extracts in Wharton, *Digest*.

Battles.—Bull Run : Hart, *Source-Book*, § 116.—New Orleans : Hart, *Source-Book*, § 119.—Stone River : Hart, *Source-Book*, § 121.—Vicksburg : Hart, *Source-Book*, § 122.—Gettysburg : Hart, *Source-Book*, § 123.—Surrender of Lee : Hart, *Source-Book*, § 125. There are also abundant extracts describing encounters on land and sea in *Contemporaries*, IV, §§ 102–140.

### § 89. Reconstruction, 1865–1875.

Abundant documents on the period after the Civil War will be found in the *American Annual Cyclopædia*, and in McPherson, *Political History during the Period of Reconstruction*. Statutes and other significant political papers are in MacDonald, *Select Statutes* ; messages in Richardson, *Messages* ;

*American Annual Cyclopædia*; general material in Caldwell, *Survey*, ch. vii, and Mace, *Working Manual*, 294-296.—The footnotes to W. A. Dunning, *Essays on the Civil War and Reconstruction* are the best index to the source material.

The text of the three amendments embodying the principles of Reconstruction is in the usual texts of the Constitution (see § 77 above); also in Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xxiii, with very suggestive contemporary expositions by several members of Congress, and with brief extracts from the commentators.

Supreme Court cases: Boyd, *Cases*, 118-171 (Legal Tenders), 324-337 (*ex parte* Garland), 491-511 (Slaughter-House), 518-534 (Civil Rights), 381-394 (Cummings), 571-582 (Siebold), 552-563 (Texas *vs.* White), 652-658 (Mississippi *vs.* Andrew Johnson).

Convenient speeches are printed in *American Orations*, IV, 129-130 (H. W. Davis), 141-148 (G. H. Pendleton), 149-167 and 181-188 (Thaddeus Stevens), 168-180 (H. J. Raymond). Many private letters are given in E. L. Pierce's *Memoir and Letters of Charles Sumner*, IV.

On the narrative history and discussion of the period: Hart, *Source-Book*, ch. xix, § 127 (Andrews), § 128 (negro suffrage), § 129 (Robert E. Lee), § 120 (Thaddeus O. Stevens), § 131 (General



O. O. Howard), § 132 (Governor Chamberlain). *Contemporaries*, IV, Part VII, is wholly on the subject of Reconstruction, ch. xxiii (Conditions in the South), ch. xxiv (Principles of Reconstruction), ch. xxv (Process of Reconstruction).

James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, contains much that is significant, and, although prepared some years after most of the events described, is upon the whole accurate for the Reconstruction epoch.

#### § 90. Economic and Political Questions, 1875-1900.

On the period after Reconstruction, both the secondary and the source material is as yet little organized: there is no critical and detailed general history covering the period. Use the periodicals and political weeklies, especially the *Nation*. The documents are to be found in the *American Annual Cyclopædia*; in McPherson's biennial *Handbook of Politics*, and in Richardson, *Messages*.

Some good speeches will be found in *American Orations*, IV, 238-269 (Frank Hurd on the tariff), 296-311 (Morrill on silver), 312-328 (Blaine on silver), 329-346 (Sherman on silver); 347-366 (Jones on silver). On civil service reform there are two excellent speeches in the same collection: 367-399 (G. W. Curtis), 400-420 (Carl Schurz).

Judicial decisions: Boyd, *Cases*, 78-100 (tax cases), 246-288 (transportation cases) and many others).

The general illustrative material is scantier than for any previous period: Hugh Mc Culloch, *Men and Measures*, and John and William T. Sherman, *Letters*, are among the best things we have on the period.

Extracts from critical and narrative material are in Hart, *Source-Book*, § 133 (Tilden on the Tweed Ring), § 135 (Whittiers "Centennial Hymn"); § 136 (resumption of specie payments), § 137 (Curtis on civil service reform), § 138 (Morgan on the Indians). Abundant extracts in Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, Part viii.

### § 91. Social Questions.

A considerable part of the experience of the United States since the Civil War has been given to questions of human rights and of the relations of the government to the individual. On this subject, abundant bibliography will be found in Carroll D. Wright, *Outline of Practical Sociology* (New York, Longmans, 1899): see preliminary "Suggestions for Students," and also practical bibliographies at the head of each chapter; note especially chs. i, ii, iii (population), ch. iv (native

and foreign born), ch. v (political units), ch. vii (immigration), ch. xi (education), ch. xxiii (temperance question), ch. xxv (solutions). Much available first-hand material is to be found in the periodicals, which can be reached through *Poole's Index*. A few special Supreme Court decisions will be found in Boyd, *Cases*, 534-551 (civil rights and naturalization), 659-667 (Debs's case on strikes).

One of the best discussions of the trend of American society is James Russell Lowell's *Democracy*, reprinted in *Riverside Literature Series*, No. 123.—Discussions from contemporaries are reprinted in Hart, *Source-Book*, § 139 (Bryce), § 145 (John D. Long); *Contemporaries*, IV, ch. xxxiv.

Two notable books on the present conditions of American society are Charles William Eliot, *American Contributions to Civilization* (New York, Century Co., 1897), and *Educational Reform* (New York, Century Co., 1898). The difficulties of municipal government are set forth by an expert in a little book by Bird S. Coler, *Municipal Government* (New York, Appleton, 1900). A study of the questions of local government is facilitated by the footnotes D. F. Wilcox, *Study of City Government* (New York, Macmillan, 1897), and H. J. Goodnow, *Municipal Problems* (New York, Macmillan, 1900). A general bibliography of

questions of municipal and local government will be found in the periodical, *Municipal Affairs* (New York, March, 1901).

§ 92. Foreign Relations and Colonization,  
1865-1900.

Perhaps the most important field of present American history is in our foreign complications and in the annexation and government of our new territory. Bibliography of sources in A. B. Hart, *Foundations of American Foreign Policy*, § 79 (New York, Macmillan, 1901).

The great collections of sources are Richardson's *Messages* and *American Annual Cyclopædia*. The recent general books on American diplomacy are to some extent sources, because written by persons who have participated in this period. Such are: John W. Foster, *A Century of American Diplomacy* (Boston, Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1900); J. H. Latané, *Diplomatic Relations of the United States and Spanish America* (Baltimore, Johns Hopkins Press, 1900); Eugene Schuyler, *American Diplomacy* (New York, Scribner, 1886; relates chiefly to commercial questions); H. W. Caldwell, in his *Survey*, ch. ix, deals with the general subject. *American History Leaflets*, No. 6, is devoted to the Bering Sea question; No. 4, to the

various phases of the Monroe Doctrine ; No. 34, to the Isthmus Canal.

Many important contemporary discussions of these questions will be found in the recent volumes of the magazines and reviews, and can be found with the help of Poole's Index and its continuations. Much material of this kind is easily accessible in Harper's *Encyclopædia of United States History*.

On questions of expansion and territorial government, Caldwell, *Territorial Development*, ch. ix, takes up the annexation of Alaska and Hawaii ; ch. x, the annexation of Porto Rico and the Philippines. Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. xxiv, is given up to "Liberty in the United States Colonies and Dependencies." It includes a long extract from President McKinley's message of December, 1898 ; and shorter ones from speeches by McKinley, Long, Olney, Quay, Schurz, Hoar, Lodge, and papers by Charles Francis Adams, W. G. Sumner, Randolph, Burgess and Lyman Abbott.

The Supreme Court cases bearing on territorial questions will be found in Boyd, *Cases*, 583-602 (status of territory), 637-646 (Texan boundary).

Hart, *Source-Book*, § 134, and ch. xxi, is devoted to the Spanish War of 1898 and its consequences : § 134 (Treaty of Washington) § 140 (early Cuban troubles), § 141 (Cuban case), § 142 (Rough Rid-

ers), § 143 (Philippines), § 144 (McKinley's review of the war). A selection of extracts on the war and in colonization is to be found in *Contemporaries*, IV, Part ix, ch. xxx (Spanish War), ch. xxxi (Colonization), ch. xxxii (Foreign Problems).

## Index.

- A**CTON, Lord, on value of sources, 6.
- ADAMS, Abigail, *Familiar Letters*, 188, 229.
- ADAMS, C. F., *Familiar Letters of John Adams and his Wife*, 188.
- ADAMS, C. K., *Manual of Historical Literature*, 118; *Representative British Orations*, 120, 175.
- ADAMS, G. B., *European History*, 61; *Select Documents of English Constitutional History*, 121.
- ADAMS, John, *Familiar Letters*, 188, 229; administration, 240-241.
- ADAMS, J. Q., *Memoirs*, 112.
- ADAMS, Maurice, *More's Works*, 139.
- Aemilius, Paulus, 49.
- Aeschylus, preference as a source, 20; *Tragedies*, 23; *Seven Plays in English*, 23; *Persians*, 38.
- Agesilaus, 43. — See also Greece.
- Agricola, 53-54.
- Alcibiades, 41. — See also Greece.
- Alden, John, *Representative British Orations*, 120, 176.
- Alexander the Great, 45. — See also Greece.
- Alfred the Great, 130, 145-146. — See also England.
- Alger, A. L., *Little Flowers of St. Francis of Assisi*, 75.
- Alien and Sedition Acts, 240-241.
- Allibone, S. A., *Dictionary of Authors*, 178.
- America, abundant historical sources, 2, 4; selection and bibliography of sources, 177-178; collections of sources, 179-188; list of available sources, 188-200; sources by periods, 200-270; basis of American History, 201-202; Spanish discoveries, 202-204; naming of, 203; English discoveries and explorations, 204-205; French, Swedish, and Dutch voyages and settlements, 206-207; conditions of English colonization, 207-209; Southern Colonies, 209-211; New England Colonies, 211-

- 214; Middle Colonies, 214-215; colonial government, 215-221; colonial society, 221-224; struggle with France, 225; causes and preliminaries of the Revolution, 226-228; Revolution, 229-232; Confederation, 232-234; Federal Constitution, 234-237; organization of the government and Federal administration, 237-241; administrations of Jefferson and Madison, 241-242; War of 1812, 243; period of national organization, 244-246; Jacksonian democracy and administration, 246-249; slavery and anti-slavery, 249-251; crisis of territorial slavery, 251-257; causes and beginnings of the Civil War, 257-259; Civil War, 259-263; Reconstruction, 263-265; economic and political questions, 265-270.
- American Annual Cyclopædia*, 183, 260, 263.
- American History Leaflets*, 181.
- American Revolution, causes, 226-228; progress and conditions, 229-232; post-Revolutionary conditions, 238-239.—See also Confederation.
- Ames, H. V., *State Documents on Federal Relations*, 179.
- Ammianus Marcellinus, *History of Rome*, 23, 55-57, 66.
- Ancient History, abundance and character of sources, 2-3, 19; lack of bibliographies, 19.—See also Greece, Rome.
- Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, 129, 144-146, 148.
- Anglo-Saxon conquest and rule of England, 143-147.—See also England.
- Annals of Congress*, 238.
- Anti-slavery agitation, 250-251.—See also Slavery.
- Antony, Mark, 51, 52.—See also Rome.
- Appian, *Roman History*, 23, 49, 51.
- Arber, Edward, *Story of the Pilgrim Fathers*, 184.
- Archer, T. A., *Crusade of Richard I*, 66, 85, 126, 157.
- Aristides, 38.—See also Greece.
- Aristophanes, *Select Plays*, 23; *Comedies*, 24, 41-42.
- Aristotle, preference as a source, 20; *On the Athenian Constitution*, 24, 35.
- Armour, Margaret, *Fall of the Niebelungs*, 74.
- Arnold, T. W., *Little Flowers of St. Francis of Assisi*, 75.
- Arrian, *Anabasis of Alexander, and Indica*, 24, 45.
- Arrivabene, Charles, *Italy under Victor Emmanuel*, 66, 116.



- Arthur, King, 88-89.  
 Articles of Confederation, text, 232; attempts to amend, 234.  
 Ashley, W. J., *Edward III*, 127, 158.  
 Asser, *Annals of the Reign of Alfred the Great*, 130, 145.  
 Assize of Clarendon, 153, 154.  
   —See also England.  
 Athens, early history, 35-37.—  
   See also Greece.  
*Aucassin and Nicolette: A Song-Tale of True Lovers*, 66.  
 Augustan Age, 52-55.—See also Rome.  
 Augustine, *City of God*, 24, 57-58.  
 Augustus, *Monumentum Ancyranum*, 24, 52.—See also Rome.  
 Aulard, F. A., *Études et Leçons sur la Révolution française*, 111.  
**B**ACOURT, Adolphe de, *Souvenirs of a Diplomat*, 189.  
 Babylonians, Herodotus on, 37.  
 Bancroft, Frederic, *William H. Seward*, 263.  
 Bancroft, George, *History of the Formation of the Constitution*, 184, 233, 236.  
 Baireuth, Wilhelmina, Margravine of, *Memoirs*, 66, 103.  
 Barnard, F. P., *Strongbow's Conquest of Ireland*, 126, 157.  
 Baxter, G., *Moltke's Speeches*, 73.  
 Bayard Series, *Table Talk and Opinions of Napoleon Buonaparte*, 73.  
 Beaufort, R. L. de, *Memoirs of the Prince de Talleyrand*, 76.  
 Bede, *Ecclesiastical History of England*, 78, 131, 143-145.  
 Bell, Clara, *Moltke's Franco-German War*, 73; *Moltke's Letters*, 73.  
 Bell, Henry, *Selections from Luther's Table Talk*, 71.  
 Bémont, Charles, *Chartes des Libertés Anglaises*, 120.  
 Benton, T. H., *Thirty Years' View*, 189.  
*Beowulf*, 132, 143.  
 Berners, Lord, *Chronicles of Froissart*, 70.  
 Betham-Edwards, M., *Young's Travels in France*, 77.  
 Beveridge, Henry, *Calvin's Institutes*, 68.  
 Bibliographies, lack of, on Ancient History, 19; on Mediæval and Modern European History, 60-61; on English History, 117-120; on American History, 177-178; on the Civil War, 260; on recent social questions, 266-267; on municipal questions, 268; on American diplomacy, 268.

- Bigelow, John, *Franklin's Autobiography*, 192.
- Bill of Rights, text, 173, 217.
- Bingham, D. A., *Selection from the Letters and Despatches of the First Napoleon*, 73.
- Bismarck, Otto von, in the *France-German War*, 66, 115; *Secret Pages of his History*, 67, 115; *Autobiography*, 67, 115; *Table-Talk*, 67, 115; *Letters*, 67, 113; *Conversations*, 67, 115; and the *Foundations of the German Empire*, 115.—See also Germany.
- Black Death, 158.
- Blaine, J. G., *Twenty Years of Congress*, 265.
- Bohn, W. S., *Cesar's Commentaries*, 24.
- Bohn Library* translations of the classics, 22.
- Bosanquet, F. C. T., *Letters of Pliny, the Younger*, 30.
- Bostock, John, *Natural History of Pliny*, 30.
- Botsford, G. W., source references in his histories of Greece and Rome, 19.
- Bourne, E. G., *Essays in Historical Criticism*, 203, 254.
- Bourne, H. E., announced book on teaching of history, 18.
- Bourrienne, L. A. F. de, *Memoirs of Napoleon Bonaparte*, 67, 108
- Boyd, C. E., *Cases on American Constitutional Law*, 245.
- Boyle, G. D., *Characters and Episodes selected from Clarendon*, 134.
- Bradford, William, *History of Plymouth Plantation*, 189, 211
- Bramhall, Edith, *Early Christian Persecutions*, 57, 78.
- Braybrooke, Lord, *Pepys's Diary*, 140.
- Brewer, D. J., *World's Best Orations*, 65.
- Brodribb, H. J., *Letters of the Younger Pliny*, 30; *Agricola and Germania of Tacitus*, 32; *Annals and History of Tacitus*, 32.
- Brogie, Duc de, *Memoirs of the Prince de Talleyrand*, 76.
- Brown, John, raid on Harper's Ferry, 256.
- Brumbaugh, M. G., *Liberty Bell Leaflets*, 179.
- Brutus, 51.
- Bryant, W. C., *Iliad of Homer*, 27; *Odyssey of Homer*, 27.
- Buchheim, C. A., *First Principles of the Reformation*, 72.
- Buckingham, J. S., *Slave States of America*, 190.
- Burke, Edmund, *Reflections on the Revolution in France*, 67, 106; speech on conciliation of the colonies, 227.

- Burnaby, Andrew, *Travels through the Middle Settlements in North America*, 190.
- Burnet, Gilbert, *History of My Own Time*, 132, 172.
- Burnett, P. H., *Recollections*, 253.
- Busch, Moritz, *Bismarck in the Franco-German War*, 66; *Bismarck, some Secret Pages of his History*, 67.
- Butcher, S. H., *Odyssey of Homer*, 27.
- Butler, A. J., *Bismarck*, 67; *Letters of Camille Cavour*, 68; *Marbot's Memoirs*, 111; *Thiébault's Memoirs*, 111.
- Byrd, William, *Works*, 222.
- CABOT, John and Sebastian, voyages, 165, 204.
- Cæsar, *Commentaries*, 24, 50-51, 142; life, 51.—See also Rome.
- Caldwell, H. W., *American History Studies*, 180.
- California, annexation, 253; discovery of gold, 253.
- Calvin, John, *Institutes*, 68, 98.—See also Reformation.
- Camelot Series, *Passages from Froissart*, 70.
- Camillus, 48.
- Campbell, Lewis, *Seven Plays of Aeschylus*, 23; *Seven Plays of Sophocles*, 32.
- Canada, French, trade, 206; government, 206.
- Canute, 146.—See also England.
- Carlyle, Thomas, *Cromwell's Letters and Speeches*, 134.
- Carolinas, settlement, 210.—See also Colonies.
- Carter, Elizabeth, *Moral Discourses of Epictetus*, 25.
- Cartier, Jacques, voyage, 206.
- Cary, Henry, *Herodotus: literal version*, 26.
- Cassell's National Library, *Voyages in Search of the North-West Passage*, 137, 164; *Voyagers' Tales*, 137, 164.
- Cataline, conspiracy, 50, 51.—See also Rome.
- Cato the Elder, 49.—See also Rome.
- Cavour, Camille, *Letters*, 68, 113.—See also Italy.
- Cellini, Benvenuto, *Memoirs*, 68, 92.—See also Renaissance.
- Champlain, Samuel de, explorations, 206.
- Channing, Edward, *Guide to the Study of American History*, 178; *American History Leaflets*, 181.
- Chanson de Roland*, 68, 83.
- Chapman, George, *Hesiod's Works and Days*, 26.
- Charles the Great, 81-83.—See also Europe.

- Charters, London, 151; colonial, texts, 218-219.
- Chaucer, Geoffrey, *Canterbury Tales*, 133, 158.
- Chastellux, F. J., *Travels in North America*, 191.
- Cheyney, E. P., *Early Reformation Period in England*, 126, 160; *English Constitutional Documents*, 126, 150, 152; *English Towns and Gilds*, 126, 155; *England in the Time of Wycliffe*, 126; *English Manorial Documents*, 126, 155; *Documents Illustrative of Feudalism*, 126, 149.
- Chinnock, E. J., Arrian's *Anabasis of Alexander*, and *Indica*, 24.
- Chivalry, 86-87, 138-139, 151.  
—See also Crusades, Feudalism.
- Christianity, under the Roman Empire, 57-58; the Church in the Middle Ages, 78-79; Reformation, 96-99; reestablishment in England, 131, 144-145; Reformation in England, 159-161; Puritan movement, 167, 168.
- Chronicles of the Crusades*, 68, 84.
- Church, A. J., *Letters of the Younger Pliny*, 30; *Agricola and Germania of Tacitus*, 32; *Annals and History of Tacitus*, 32.
- Church in the Middle Ages, 78-79.—See also Christianity, Europe.
- Cicero, *Letters*, 25; *Orations*, 25, 51; *Works*, 25; life, 51.  
—See also Rome.
- Cimon, Age of, 39.—See also Greece.
- Civil dissensions in Rome, 50-51.—See also Rome.
- Civil service in United States, under Jackson, 248; reform, 265-266.
- Civil War in America, causes, 257-259; progress, 259-260; political phases, 261-262; conditions, 262; diplomacy, 263; battles, 263.—See also Reconstruction, Slavery.
- Clarendon, Earl of, *History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars in England*, 133, 168.
- Clarke, William, *Political Orations*, 121, 175.
- Clough, A. H., *Plutarch's Lives of Illustrious Men*, 31.
- Colby, C. W., *Selections from the Sources of English History*, 119, 121.
- Coler, B. S., *Municipal Government*, 267.
- Coleridge, E. P., *Plays of Euripides*, 26; *Tragedies of Sophocles*, 32.

- Collections of sources in Ancient History, 21-22; in European History, 62-65; in English History, 120-129; in American History, 179-188.
- Colonies, American, Southern, 209-211; New England, 211-214; Middle, 214-215; government, 215-221; society, 221-224; struggle with France, 225.—See also Colonization, Revolution, Territories.
- Colonization, attempted, 205; French, 206; Dutch, 207; Swedish, 207; conditions of English, 207-209.—See also Colonies.
- Columbus, Christopher, voyages, 203.
- Commines, Philip de, *Memoirs*, 68, 95-96.
- Compromise of 1850, 254.—See also Slavery.
- Confederate States, government, 258, 262-263.—See also Civil War, Secession.
- Confederation, American, conditions, 232-234.—See also Federal Constitution, Union.
- Congress of Vienna, 112.—See also Europe.
- Conington, John, *Aeneid of Virgil* (verse), 33; (prose), 33.
- Connecticut, settlement, 214.—See also Colonies.
- Constitution of Clarendon, 153, 154, 216.—See also England.
- Constitutional history, Athenian, 35-36; documents of French Revolution, 106; documents of Modern Europe, 113; English, Anglo-Saxon period, 146-147; Norman period, 149-151; period of development, 151-156; fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, 159; Elizabeth and James I, 161-163; Puritan Revolution, 166-169, 217; Revolution of 1689, 172-173; English documents, 216-217; principles of control of colonies, 217; colonial documents, 218-220; Revolutionary documents, 228.—See also Articles of Confederation, Federal Constitution, States, and each country by name.
- Coriolanus, 48.—See also Rome.
- Coronado, Francisco de, expedition, 204.
- Courses advised, 1.
- Cox, G. W., *Popular Romances of the Middle Ages*, 69, 83.
- Crassus, 51.
- Crécy, battle, 157.—See also Hundred Years' War.
- Crestien de Troyes, *King Arthur and the Table Round*, 69, 88.
- Cromwell, Oliver, *Letters and*

- Speeches*, 134, 169.—See also England.
- Crozer Theological Seminary, *Historical Leaflets*, 65.
- Crusades, 84-86.—See also Europe.
- Cuba, Ostend Manifesto, 255.—See also Spanish-American War.
- Curtis, W. E., *United States and Foreign Powers*, 268.
- DAKYNs, H. G., *Works of Xenophon*, 33.
- Dale, Henry, *Thucydides' History of the Peloponnesian War*, 33.
- Dana, R. H., *Two Years Before the Mast*, 253.
- Danish invasion of England, 145-146.
- Dante Alighieri, *Divine Comedy*, 69, 89; *New Life*, 89.—See also Literature.
- Davies, James, *Works of Hesiod, Callimachus and Theognis*, 27.
- Davis, Jefferson, *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government*, 260.—See also Civil War, Confederate States.
- Davis, Reuben, *Recollections of Mississippi and Mississippians*, 191.
- Declaration of Independence, text, 230.—See also American Revolution.
- Delaware, settlement, 215.—See also Colonies.
- Della Rocca, Enrico, *Autobiography of a Veteran*, 69, 116.
- Demosthenes, *Orations*, 25, 45.—See also Greece.
- De Vaca's expedition, 204.
- De Soto, Ferdinand, explorations, 204.
- Dewey, D. R., *Political History since 1815*, 61.
- Dickens, Charles, *American Notes*, 191.
- Dictionary of National Biography*, 119.
- Diplomacy, American, Peace of 1783, 231; during Washington's and Adams's administrations, 240; question of neutrality, 242; Treaty of Ghent, 243; Treaty of 1819, 244; Monroe Doctrine, 245-246; peace with Mexico, 253; Oregon question, 253; isthmus question, 254; of the Civil War, 263; bibliography, 268; recent, 268-270.—See also each country by name.
- Discovery and exploration of America, Spanish, 202-204; Icelandic, 203; English, 204-205; French, 206.—See also Colonization.
- Dods, Marcus, *Works of Aurelius Augustine; City of God*, 24.

- Donaldson, Thomas, *Public Domain*, 184.
- Douglas, S. A., debates with Lincoln, 256.
- Doyle, J. A., *English in America*, 177.
- Drake, Sir Francis, voyages, 205.
- Dred Scott decision, 256.—See also Slavery.
- Dunning, W. A., *Essays on the Civil War and Reconstruction*, 178, 264.
- Dutch settlements in America, 207.
- Dwight, Timothy, *Travels in New England and New York*, 192, 241.
- EARLE, A. M., *Home Life in Colonial Days*, 222; *Child Life in Colonial Days*, 222; *Stage-Coach and Tavern Days*, 222.
- Earle, John, *Deeds of Beowulf*, 132.
- Economic conditions, French during the monarchy, 101, 104-105; English guilds, 155; post-Revolutionary in America, 238; America in 1815-1829, 244; in 1875-1900, 265-266.—See also Feudalism, Internal Improvements, Social Conditions.
- Education, Middle Ages, 90.—See also each country by name.
- Edward III. of England, 158.—See also England.
- Eggleston, Edward, *Beginners of a Nation*, 177; *Transit of Civilization*, 177.
- Eginhard, *Life of Charlemagne*, 69, 81-82.
- Egyptians, Herodotus on, 37.
- Eliot, C. W., *American Contributions to Civilization*, 267; *Educational Reform*, 267.
- Elizabeth, Queen of England, reign, 161-165.—See also England.
- Elliot, Jonathan, *Debates on the Federal Constitution*, 195, 235, 236.
- Elton, C. A., *Remains of Hesiod*, 27.
- Emancipation Proclamation, text and accounts, 261.—See also Civil War, Slavery.
- Emerton, Ephraim, *Desiderius Erasmus*, 70.
- England, abundant historical sources, 2, 4, 117; selection and bibliography of sources, 117-120; collection of sources, 120-129; list of available sources, 129-141; discoveries in America, 136-137, 204-205; sources by periods, 142-176; pre-Norman period, 142-147; Norman period, 147-151; constitutional development, 151-

- 157; fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, 157-159; Reformation, 159-161; Elizabeth and James I., 161-166; Puritan Revolution, 166-170; Restoration and Revolution, 170-173; eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, 173-176; relation to the colonies, 217-218; and the American Revolution, 226-232; American neutrality during Napoleonic wars, 240, 242; War of 1812, 243.
- Epic Age of Greece, 34-35.—See also Greece.
- Epictetus, *Discourses*, 25-26, 55.
- Erasmus, Desiderius, *Life and Letters*, 69, 70, 98-99; *Select Colloquies*, 69.—See also Reformation.
- Euripides, *Plays*, 26, 42; *Three Dramas*, 26.
- Europe, character of available historical sources, 3-4, 60; selection and bibliography of sources, 60-62; collections of sources, 62-65; list of available sources, 66-77; sources by periods, 77-116; Church in the Middle Ages, 78-80; Mohammedanism, 80-81; Charles the Great, 81-83; Crusades, 84-86; chivalry, 86-87; literature during the Middle Ages, 87-90; education during the Middle Ages, 90; Renaissance, 90-96; Reformation, 96-99; French Monarchy, 99-104; French Revolution, 104-106; Napoleonic Era, 107-112; in the nineteenth century, 112-116.—See also England.
- Eutropius.—See Justin.
- Evans, Sebastian, *Mirror of Perfection: the oldest life of St. Francis of Assisi*, 75.
- Evelyn, John, *Diary*, 134, 170.
- FABIUS, 49.—See also Rome.
- Fairley, William, *Monumentum Ancyranum: the Deeds of Augustus*, 24.
- Falkner, R. P., *Statistical Documents of the Middle Ages*, 83.
- Farnham, M. F., *Documents relating to Maine*, 213.
- Farnham, T. J., *Travels*, 253.
- Federal Constitution, convention, 234, 235; text, 235; ratification, 236-237; interpretation, 245, 262, 264, 266; last three amendments, 264.—See also America.
- Federalist*, 193, 236.—See also Federal Constitution.
- Fernow, Berthold, *Documents relative to the Colonial History of New York*, 215.



- Feudalism, 95, 149-150.—See also Chivalry, Crusades.
- Fischer, H. W., *Moltke's Franco-German War*, 73; *Moltke's Letters*, 73.
- Fisher, S. G., *Evolution of the Constitution*, 235.
- Flaminius, 49.
- Fling, F. M., *Greek and Roman Civilization*, 21; announced source-book on Greek History, 22; *Teutonic Barbarians*, 58; *Civilization in the Middle Ages*, 64; *Monasticism*, 78; *Selections from the Koran*, 81; *Chivalry*, 87.
- Flint, Robert, *History of the Philosophy of History*, 17.
- Florence of Worcester, *Chronicle*, 148.
- Florida, purchase, 244.—See also Territories.
- Florus, *Epitome*, 32, 50.
- Ford, P. L., *Jefferson's Writings*, 71; *Federalist*, 193; *New England Primer*, 224; *Essays on the Constitution*, 236; *Pamphlets on the Constitution*, 236.
- Forster, J. R., *Kalm's Travels into North America*, 194.
- Foster, Mrs. Jonathan, *Vasari's Lives of Eminent Painters, Sculptors, and Architects*, 77.
- Foster, J. W., *Century of American Diplomacy*, 268.
- Foster, W. E., *References to Presidential Administrations*, 178.
- France, time of Louis XI, 95; period of the monarchy, 99-104; Revolution, 104-107; Napoleonic Era, 107-112; Second Empire, 114; Franco-Prussian War, 115-116; Hundred Years' War, 136, 157-158; explorations and settlements in America, 205-207; French and Indian War, 225.
- Francke, Kuno, *Social Forces in German Literature*, 88.
- Franklin, Benjamin, *Autobiography*, 192, 222.—See also America.
- Frazer, J. G., *Pausanias's Description of Greece*, 29.
- Frederick the Great, 104.—See also Europe.
- Frederick William of Prussia, 104.
- Freeman, E. A., on value of sources, 6; *Norman Conquest*, 119.
- Freese, J. H., *Orationes of Isocrates*, 28.
- Frere, J. H., *Select Plays of Aristophanes*, 23.
- Froissart, Jean, value as a source, 9; *Chronicles*, 70, 86, 135, 157, 159.
- Froude, J. A., *Life and Letters of Erasmus*, 70.

- G**AIRDNER, James, *England*, 119; *Paston Letters*, 139.
- Gardiner, S. R., *Introduction to the Study of English History*, 118; *Constitutional Documents of the Puritan Revolution*, 122, 166-168; *School Atlas of English History*, 176.
- Garibaldi, Giuseppe, *Autobiography*, 70, 114.—See also Italy.
- Garnett, J. M., *Beowulf*, 132.
- Garnett, Richard, *International Library of Famous Literature*, 65.
- Gee, Henry, *Documents illustrative of English Church History*, 160.
- Geography, English, 176; American, physical, 201; political, 202.—See also each country by name.
- Georgia, settlement, 211.
- Germany, early Germans, 58-59, 143; Renaissance, 94; Reformation, 96-99; Franco-Prussian War, 115-116.—See also Charles the Great.
- Gesta Romanorum*, 70, 87.
- Gibbs, George, *Memoirs of the Administrations of Washington and John Adams*, 192.
- Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, voyage, 205.
- Gildas, *Works*, 135, 143, 144.
- Gilds, English, 155.—See also Economic conditions.
- Giles, J. A., *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, 129; *Six Old English Chronicles*, 130, 131, 135; Bede's *Ecclesiastical History of England*, 131; William of Malmesbury's *Chronicles*, 141.
- Gilman, D. C., Tocqueville's *Democracy in America*, 198.
- Gladstone, W. E., *Gleanings of Past Years*, 70, 116.—See also England.
- Gollancz, Israel, Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, 139.
- Goodnow, H. J., *Municipal Problems*, 267.
- Gracchi, 51.—See also Rome.
- Grand Remonstrance of 1641, text, 167.
- Græco-Persian wars, 38-39.—See also Greece.
- Grant, U. S., *Personal Memoirs*, 192, 260.—See also Civil War.
- Graydon, Alexander, *Memoirs*, 229.
- Greece, selection and bibliography of sources, 19-20; collections of sources, 21-22; list of available sources, 23-33; sources by periods, 34-46; epic age, 34-35; early history of Athens, 35-37; early history of Sparta, 38; lyric poetry,

- 38; Græco-Persian wars, 38-39; Age of Cimon, 39; Age of Pericles, 39-41; Peloponnesian War, 41-42; Tyranny at Syracuse, 42; Spartan Supremacy, 42-44; Theban Supremacy, 44; Macedonian Supremacy, 45; Alexander the Great, 45-46.
- Green, J. R., *Short History of the English People*, 119.
- Gross, Charles, *Sources and Literature of English History*, 117.
- Grote, George, source references in his *History of Greece*, 20.
- Grund, F. J., *Americans*, 193.
- Guilland, Antoine, *L'Allemagne nouvelle et ses historiens*, 18.
- HABEAS CORPUS** Act, text, 173, 216.
- Hakluyt, Richard, *Principall Navigations*, 136, 164.
- Hale, E. E., *Franklin in France*, 70, 105.
- Hall, Mrs. Angus, *Memoirs of the Prince de Talleyrand*, 76.
- Hall, J. L., *Beowulf*, 132.
- Hall, J. R. C., *Beowulf*, 132.
- Hamilton, Alexander, *Federalist*, 193.—See also *America*.
- Hampton, James, *General History of Polybius*, 31.
- Handy Literal Translations*, 22; of *Cæsar's Gallic and Civil Wars*, 24; of *Cicero's Works*, 25; of *Juvenal's Satires*, 28; of *Livy*, 29; of *Select Dialogues of Lucian*, 29; of the *Orations of Lysias*, 29; of the *Works of Xenophon*, 33.
- Hardy, W. J., *Documents illustrative of English Church History*, 160.
- Harper's *Encyclopædia of United States History*, 269.
- Harrison, William, *Description of England*, 137, 163.
- Hart, A. B., *American History Told by Contemporaries*, 122, 180; *Source-Book of American History*, 122, 180; *Guide to the Study of American History*, 178; *American History Leaflets*, 181; *Foundations of American Foreign Policy*, 268.
- Haskins, C. H., *Life of Mediæval Students*, 90.
- Hawkins, Sir John, *voyages*, 205.
- Hay, John, *Complete Works of Abraham Lincoln*, 194.
- Hayne, R. Y., debate with Webster, 247-248.
- Hazard, Samuel, *Annals of Pennsylvania*, 214.
- Hazen, C. D., *Contemporary American Opinion of the French Revolution*, 105, 184.

- Hazlitt, William, *Table-Talk of Martin Luther*, 71.
- Headlam, J. W., *Bismarck and the Foundation of the German Empire*, 115.
- Henderson, E. F., *Select Historical Documents of the Middle Ages*, 62, 71, 123, 154; *Side-Lights on English History*, 71, 112, 123, 165, 169.
- Henry I of England, reign and character, 147, 148; charter, 150, 216; charter to London, 151; relation with Rome, 151.—See also England.
- Henry II of England, charter, 152; Assize of Clarendon, 153, 154; Constitution of Clarendon, 153, 154.—See also England.
- Henry IV of France, 100-102.—See also France.
- Henry VIII of England, 160-161.—See also England.
- Henry of Huntington, *Chronicle*, 149.
- Henry, M. S., *Aucassin and Nicolette: A Song-Tale of True Lovers*, 66.
- Herms, M., *Moltke's Memoirs*, 73.
- Herodotus, preference as a source, 20; *History*, 26, 36-37.
- Hesiod, *Works and Days*, 26; *Works*, 27; *Remains*, 27, 35.
- Hickie, W. J., *Comedies of Aristophanes*, 24.
- Higginson, T. W., *Young Folks' Book of American Explorers*, 181.
- Hill, Mabel, *Liberty Documents*, 124, 155, 181.
- Hinsdale, B. A., *How to Study and Teach History*, 17.
- Hodgkin, Thomas, *Italy and her Invaders*, 56, 58, 71.
- Hoey, Mrs. Cashel, *Remusat's Memoirs*, 75.
- Holm, Adolph, notes on sources in his *History of Greece*, 19.
- Homer, preference as a source, *Illiad*, 27, 34; *Odyssey*, 27, 34.—See also Greece.
- Hough, F. B., *American Constitutions*, 218.
- Horace, *Works*, 28, 53.
- Howland, A. C., *Early Germans*, 58; *Ordeals*, *Compurgations*, *Excommunication*, and *Interdict*, 78, 126, 147.
- Hudson, Henry, voyages, 206.
- Hundred Years' War, 135, 157-158.—See also England.
- Hutchinson, E. M., *Library of American Literature*, 187.
- Hutchinson, P. O., *Diary and Letters of Thomas Hutchinson*, 193.
- Hutchinson, Thomas, *Diary and Letters*, 193, 216; *History of Massachusetts*, 221.

- Hutton, W. H., *St. Thomas of Canterbury*, 126, 157; *Simon de Montfort*, 126; *Misrule of Henry III*, 126, 156.
- I**CELANDIC discoveries, 203.  
 Indiana, University of, *Extracts from the Sources*, 65, 71.  
 Indians, sources, 201-202; Jesuits' experiences, 206.  
 Internal improvements in the United States, 244, 248-249.  
 —See also Economic conditions.  
 Irving, Washington, *Astoria*, 253; *Captain Bonneville*, 253.  
 Isocrates, *Orations*, 28, 44.  
 Isthmus question, 254, 269.  
 Italy, Renaissance, 90-94; unification, 113-114, 116.
- J**ACKSON, Andrew, democracy and administration, 246-249.  
 Jacobs, Joseph, *Jews of Angevin England*, 127, 156.  
 James I of England, reign, 161-165.—See also England.  
 Jausz, Ferencz, Kossuth's *Memories of my Exile*, 71.  
 Jean de Troyes, *Scandalous Chronicle*, 68.  
 Jeans, G. E., *Life and Letters of Marcus Tullius Cicero*, 25.
- Jefferson, Thomas, *Writings*, 71, 105; administration, 241-242.—See also America.  
 Jennings, G. H., *Half-Hours with Greek and Latin Authors*, 21.  
 Jerusalem, Roman conquest, 52.  
 Jews in England, 156.  
 Johnston, Alexander, *Representative American Orations*, 181.  
 Johnstone, W. S., *Half-Hours with Greek and Latin Authors*, 21.  
 Joinville, John de, *Crusade of St. Louis*, 68, 71, 84.  
 Jones, E. H., *Popular Romances of the Middle Ages*, 69, 83.  
 Josephus, *Works*, 28, 52; *Jewish War*, 52; *Antiquities*, 52.  
 Jowett, Benjamin, *Dialogues of Plato*, 30; *Thucydides, translated into English*, 33.  
 Jugurthine War, 50.—See also Rome.  
 Jury trial, early English, 156.  
 Justin, Nepos, and Eutropius, *Works*, 28, 49-50.  
 Juvenal, *Satires*, 28, 54.
- K**ALM, Peter, *Travels into North America*, 194, 222.  
 Kansas civil war, 255-256.  
 Kansas-Nebraska Act, 255.—See also Slavery.

- Kimball, G. S. *Pictures of Rhode Island in the Past*, 213.
- Kendall, Elizabeth, *Source Book of English History*, 119, 124.
- Kennedy, C. R., *Oration of Demosthenes*, 25, *Olynthiac*, and *Other Public Orations of Demosthenes*, 25; *Oration of Demosthenes on the Crown and on the Embassy*, 25.
- Kenyon, F. G., *Aristotle on the Athenian Constitution*, 24.
- Kossuth, Louis, *Memoirs of my Exile*, 71, 116.
- LANE-POOLE, Stanley,  
*Speeches and Table-Talk of the Prophet Mohammad*, 72, 80.
- Lang, Andrew, on historical partiality, 14; *Iliad of Homer*, 27; *Odyssey of Homer*, 27.
- Langland, William, *Vision of Piers the Plowman*, 138, 158.
- Langlois, C. V., on value of sources, 6; *Introduction to the Study of History*, 17.
- Lanier, Sidney, *Boys' Froissart*, 70; *Boys' King Arthur*, 88, 138.
- Larned, J. N., *Literature of American History*, 177.
- La Salle, Robert de, explorations, 206.
- Latané, J. H., *United States and Spanish-America*, 268.
- Lawton, W. C., *Three Dramas of Euripides*, 26.
- Leaf, Walter, *Iliad of Homer*, 27.
- Lecky, W. E. H., *England in the Eighteenth Century*, 120.
- Lee, G. C., *Source-book of English History*, 118, 125, 143.
- Lee, Samuel, *Aeneid, Eclogues and Georgics of Virgil*, 33.
- Levermore, C. H., *Political History since 1815*, 61.
- Lewis, J. D., *Letters of the Younger Pliny*, 30.
- Liberty Bell Leaflets*, 179.
- Lillie, John, *Remusat's Memoirs*, 75.
- Lincoln, Abraham, *Complete Works*, 194, 260, 261; debates with Douglas, 256; state papers and declarations, 261; contemporary opinion, 261.—See also America.
- Literature, lyric poetry of Greece, 38; Middle Ages, 87-90; Chaucer and Langland, 133, 138, 158.—See also each country by name.
- Livy, *History of Rome*, 29, 47.
- Lloyd, Mary, *New Letters of Napoleon I*, 73.
- Locke, M. E., *Anti-Slavery*, 249.
- Lodge, H. C., *Federalist*, 193.
- Lollards in England, 159.

- London, charter, 151; plague, 171; great fire, 171.
- Lonesdale, James, *Aeneid, Eclogues, and Georgics of Virgil*, 33.
- Long, George, *Selection from the Discourses of Epictetus, with the Encheiridion*, 26; *Thoughts of Marcus Aurelius*, 29; *Plutarch's Lives*, 31.
- Longfellow, H. W., *Dante's Divine Comedy*, 69.
- Louis IX of France (Saint Louis), 84-85.
- Louis XI of France, 95.
- Louis XIV of France, court, 102-103.—See also France.
- Louisiana, settlement, 207; purchase, 242.—See also Territories.
- Lowe, Charles, *Bismarck's Table-Talk*, 67.
- Lowell, J. R., *Biglow Papers*, 194; *Democracy*, 267.
- Lucian, *Dialogues*, 29, 46.
- Ludlow, J. N., *Popular Epics of the Middle Ages*, 83.
- Luther, Martin, value as a source, 9; *Table Talk*, 71, 98; *First Principles of the Reformation, or the Ninety-Five Theses and the Three Primary Works*, 72, 97-98.—See also Reformation.
- Lycurgus, 38.—See also Greece.
- Lydians, Herodotus on, 37.
- Lysander, 43.—See also Greece.
- Lysias, *Orations*, 29, 43.
- MACAULAY, G. C., *History of Herodotus*, 26.
- McClumpha, C. F., *Moltke's Essays*, 73.
- McCulloch, Hugh, *Men and Measures*, 266.
- McDevitte, W. A., *Cesar's Commentaries*, 24.
- McDonald, William, *Select Characters illustrative of American History*, 182; *Select Documents illustrative of American History*, 182; *Select Statutes illustrative of American History*, 182.
- McDougall, M. G., *Fugitive Slaves*, 249.
- Mace, W. H., on power of applying facts, 12; *Working Manual of American History*, 182.
- Macedonia, supremacy in Greece, 45; wars with Rome, 47-49.—See also Greece.
- Machiavelli, Nicolò, *The Prince*, 72, 93.—See also Renaissance.
- Maclay, E. S., *Journal of William Maclay*, 195.
- Maclay, William, *Journal*, 195, 239.
- McPherson, Edward, *Political History during the Rebellion*,

- 185, 259; *Political History during the Period of Reconstruction*, 186, 263.
- Madison, James, *Debates in the Federal Convention*, 195, 235; administration, 241-243.
- Magna Charta, text and its use, 152-153, 216.—See also Constitutional history.
- Maine, settlement, 213.—See also Colonies.
- Malory, Sir Thomas, *Morte d'Arthur*, 88, 138, 151.
- Mandrot, B. de, on Commynes' *Memoirs*, 96.
- Manors, English, 155.
- Marbot, Baron de, *Memoirs*, 111.
- Marcus Aurelius, preference as a source, 20; *Thoughts*, 29, 55.
- Marius, 51.
- Marquette, Jacques, explorations, 206.
- Martin, Sir Theodore, *Works of Horace*, 28.
- Mary Queen of Scots, 165.
- Maryland, settlement, 210.—See also Colonies.
- Massachusetts, settlement, 212-213.—See also Colonies.
- Maxse, Fitzhardinge, *Prince Bismarck's Letters*, 67.
- Mazzini, Joseph, *Life and Writings*, 72, 114.—See also Italy.
- Mead, E. D., *Old South Leaflets*, 125, 183.
- Mead, W. E., Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, 139.
- Mediterranean countries, Roman conquest, 48-50.
- Memoirs, value as a source, 4, 111.
- Méneval, C. F. de, *Memoirs*, 72, 109.
- Méneval, N. J. de, C. F. de Méneval's *Memoirs*, 72.
- Method in teaching history, 5, 7, 8, 17; books on, 17-18.
- Metternich, Prince, *Memoirs*, 72, 111.
- Mexican War, 252, 253.
- Mexico, conquest, 203.
- Michael Angelo, 94.—See also Renaissance.
- Mississippi River, early explorations, 204, 206.
- Missouri Compromise, 245.—See also Slavery.
- Mitchell, E. K., *Canons of the First Four General Councils*, 57.
- Mohammed, *Speeches and Table Talk*, 72, 80; *Corân*, 72.
- Mohammedanism, 80-81.—See also Europe.
- Moltke, Helmuth von, *Essays, Speeches, and Memoirs*, 73, 115; *Franco-German War*, 72, 115; *Letters*, 73, 116.



- Mommsen, Theodor, source references in his *History of Rome*, 20.
- Monroe Doctrine, origin, 245-246; phases, 269.
- Moore, Frank, *Diary of the American Revolution*, 195; *Songs and Ballads of the American Revolution*, 196.
- More, Sir Thomas, *Utopia*, 139; *Richard III*, 139; described, 161.
- Morley, Henry, *Mediæval Tales*, 73, 83, 87.
- Morris, A. C., *Diary and Letters of Gouverneur Morris*, 73.
- Morris, Gouverneur, *Diary and Letters*, 73, 105.
- Morris, William, *Tale of Beowulf*, 132.
- Mosher, T. B., *Mediæval Latin Students' Songs*, 90.
- Muir, Sir William, *Corân*, 72.
- Mullinger, J. B., *Introduction to the Study of English History*, 118.
- Municipal Affairs*, 268.
- Municipal government, present problems in America, 267-268.
- Munro, D. C., announced source-book on Roman History, 22; *Early Christian Persecutions*, 57, 78; *Syllabus in Mediæval History*, 60; *Life of St. Columban*, 78; *Monastic Tales*, 78; *Selections from the Laws of Charles the Great*, 83; *Urban and the Crusades*, 85; *Letters of the Crusaders*, 85; *Fourth Crusade*, 85; *Mediæval Student*, 90.
- Myers, Ernest, *Iliad of Homer*, 27; *Extant Odes of Pindar*, 30.
- Mythology, Greek, 29, 35, 41.
- NAPIER, Mrs. Alexander, Metternich's *Memoirs*, 72.
- Napoleon I, *Letters*, 73, 107, 108; *Table Talk and Opinions*, 73, 108; *Addresses*, 74, 108; era, 107-112.
- National Bank controversy, 248.
- Nebraska, University of, *Studies in European History*, 64, 74.
- Nepos.—See Justin.
- Neutrality during the Napoleonic wars, 240, 242-243.
- Newboldt, Henry, *Stories from Froissart*, 70.
- Newell, W. W., *King Arthur and the Table Round*, 69.
- New England, colonial, 211-214.—See also America.
- New Hampshire, settlement, 213.—See also Colonies.
- New Haven, settlement, 214.—See also Colonies.
- New Jersey, settlement, 215.—See also Colonies.

- Newspapers, colonial, 223.  
 New York, settlement, 215.—  
     See also Colonies.  
 Nichols, F. M., *Epistles of Erasmus*, 69.  
 Nicias, 41.  
 Nicolay, J. G., *Complete Works of Abraham Lincoln*, 194.  
*Nibelungenlied*, 74, 87.  
 Nigra, Count, *Letters of Camille Cavour*, 68.  
 Niles, Hezekiah, *Principles and Acts of the Revolution*, 186.  
 Norman conquest and rule of England, 147-151.—See also England.  
 Northwest Ordinance, 233.—See also Territories.  
 Norton, C. E., Dante's *Divine Comedy*, 69; Dante's *New Life*, 89.  
 Nullification controversy, 247-248.—See also Secession.
- O'**CALLAGHAN, E. B., *Documents relative to the Colonial History of New York*, 215.  
*Old South Leaflets*, 125, 183.  
 Olmsted, F. L., *Journey in the Sea-board Slave States*, 196; *Journey through Texas*, 196; *Journey in the Black Country*, 196; *Cotton Kingdom*, 196, 249.  
 Orations as a source, 175.
- Ordericus Vitalis, *Ecclesiastical History*, 148.  
 Ordinance of 1784, territorial, text, 233.—See also Territories.  
 Oregon question, 242, 253-254.—See also Territories.  
 Orlando, 83.  
 Ostend Manifesto, 255.  
 Oxford Translation, *Works of Tacitus*, 32.
- PALESTINE** Pilgrims' Text Society, *Letter from Sir Joseph de Cancy*, 85; *Life of Saladin*, 85; *History of Jerusalem*, 85.  
 Pallain, M. G., *Correspondence of Prince Talleyrand during the Congress of Vienna*, 76.  
 Palmer, G. H., *Odyssey of Homer*, 27.  
 Parkman, Francis, *California and Oregon Trail*, 196; authority on New France, 225.  
 Parliament, early English, 154, 155.—See also England.  
 Parsons, T. W., Dante's *Divine Comedy*, 69.  
 Pasquier, Duke D'Audiffret, E. D. Pasquier's *History of My Time*, 74.  
 Pasquier, E. D., *History of My Time*, 74, 110.  
*Paston Letters*, 139, 158.

- Paterculus, *History*, 32, 53.  
Pausanias, *Description of Greece*, 29, 40.  
Payne, E. J., *Burke's Reflections on the Revolution in France*, 67; *Voyages of Elizabethan Seaman to America*, 137, 164.  
Peabody, S. H., *American Patriotism*, 186.  
Peloponnesian War, 41-42.—  
    See also Greece.  
Pennsylvania, settlement, 214.—  
    See also Colonies.  
Pennsylvania, University of, *Translations and Reprints*, 63, 74, 125.  
Pepys, Samuel, *Diary*, 139, 170-172.  
Pericles, Age of, 39-41.—See also Greece.  
Perrin, Bernadotte, *Plutarch's Themistocles and Aristides*, 31.  
Persia, Herodotus on, 37; wars with Greece, 38-39.  
Peru, conquest, 204.  
Petition of Right, text, 166, 216.  
Petrarch, *Correspondence*, 74, 91.—  
    —See also Renaissance.  
Philip of Macedon, 45.—See also Greece.  
Philippines, acquisition, 269-270.  
Phipps, R. W. Bourrienne's *Memoirs of Napoleon Bonaparte*, 67.  
Pierce, E. L., *Charles Sumner*, 252, 264.  
Pindar, *Odes*, 30, 38.  
Plato, *Dialogues*, 30, 44; *Republic*, 44.  
Pliny (the Elder), *Natural History*, 30, 54.  
Pliny (the Younger), preference as a source, 20; *Letters*, 30, 55.  
Plumptre, E. H., *Tragedies of Aeschylus*, 23; *Tragedies of Sophocles*, 32.  
Plutarch, preference as a source, 20; *Lives*, 31, 36.  
Plymouth, settlement, 211-212.—  
    —See also Colonies.  
Politics, post-Revolutionary in America, 238; organization of parties in America, 239-241; conditions in 1875-1900, 263-266.—See also each country by name.  
Pollard, A. W., *Sallust's Conspiracy of Catiline and the Jugurthine War*, 31.  
Pollard, E. H., *Lost Cause*, 260.  
Polybius, preference as a source, 20; *History of Rome*, 31, 48.  
Pompey, 51.—See also Rome.  
*Pool's Index*, 267, 269.  
Poore, B. P., *Constitutions and Charters*, 186.  
Poitiers, battle, 157.—See also Hundred Years' War, 157.

- Powell, E. Y., *English History from Contemporary Writers*, 126, 156; *King Alfred*, 126; *Scottish History from Contemporary Writers*, 127.
- Pre-Norman period in England, 142-147.—See also England.
- Preston, H. W., *Documents Illustrative of American History*, 183.
- Prothero, G. W., on historical partiality, 13; *Select Statutes illustrative of the Reigns of Elizabeth and James I*, 127, 161-163.
- Punic Wars, 47-49.—See also Rome.
- Puritans, Revolution and conditions in England, 166-170, 208, 217; settlements in America, 211-214; government in New England, 219.
- Putnam's *Rebellion Record*, 260.
- Pyrrhus, 48.
- Q**UAKER episode in Massachusetts, 213.
- Quincy, Josiah, *Figures of the Past*, 197.
- R**ABILLON, Leonce, *Chanson de Roland*, 68.
- Rait, R. S., *Mary Queen of Scots*, 127.
- Raleigh, Sir Walter, trial, 163; *Last Fight of the Revenge*, 164; attempted colony and voyages, 205.
- Ranke, Leopold von, *History of England*, 120.
- Raphael, 94.—See also Renaissance.
- Rawlinson, George, *History of Herodotus*, 26.
- Reconstruction period in United States, 263-265.
- Reeve, Henry, *Tocqueville's Democracy in America*, 198.
- Reformation, 96-99; in England, 159-161.
- Remusat, Madame de, *Memoirs*, 75, 110.
- Remusat, Paul de, Madame de Remusat's *Memoirs*, 75.
- Renaissance, 90-96.
- Restoration in England, 170-172.—See also England.
- Revolution of 1689 in England, 172, 173.—See also England.
- Revolution of 1848, 114.—See also Europe.
- Rhode Island, settlement, 213.—See also Colonies.
- Rhodes, J. F., *History of the United States*, 260, 263.
- Rhys, Ernest, Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, 138.
- Richard I of England, crusade, 85-86, 157.
- Richardson, J. D., *Messages and*

- Papers of the Presidents*, 187, 237.
- Richter, J. P., *Vasari's Lives of Eminent Painters, Sculptors, and Architects*, 77.
- Riedesel, Madam, *Letters and Memoirs*, 229.
- Riley, H. T., *Natural History of Pliny*, 30.
- Robinson, J. H., *Petrarch: the First Modern Scholar*, 74, 91; *Period of Early Reformation in Germany*, 96; *Pre-Reformation Period*, 97; *French Revolution*, 106; *Napoleonic Period*, 108; *Restoration and the European Policy of Metternich*, 112.
- Roche, C. E., *Pasquier's History of my Time*, 74.
- Rolfe, H. W., *Petrarch: the First Modern Scholar*, 74, 91.
- Rome, selection and bibliography of sources, 19-20; collections of sources, 21-22; list of available sources, 23-33; sources by periods, 46-59; early history, 46-48; conquest of the Mediterranean, 48-50; civil dissensions, 50-51; Augustan Age and early empire, 52-55; later empire, 55-58; early Germans, 58-59; occupation of England, 142-143.
- Ropes, J. C., *Story of the Civil War*, 260.
- Roscoe, Thomas, *Memoirs of Benvenuto Cellini*, 68.
- Rose, J. H., *Revolutionary and Napoleonic Era*, 61.
- Ross, Janet, Della Rocca's *Autobiography of a Veteran*, 69.
- Russell, W. H., *My Diary North and South*, 197.
- SABATIER, Paul, *Mirror of Perfection: the oldest life of St. Francis of Assisi*, 75.
- St. Francis of Assisi, *Little Flowers*, 75, 79; *Life*, 75, 78.
- St. John, Bayle, Saint Simon's *Memoirs*, 75.
- Saint Simon, Duke of, *Memoirs*, 75, 102.
- St. Thomas of Canterbury, 156.
- Salem witchcraft, 213.
- Sallust, *Conspiracy of Catiline and the Jugurthine War*, 31-32, 50.
- Salmon, L. M., announced book on teaching of history, 18.
- Savage, James, Winthrop's *History of New England*, 199.
- Savonarola, 95.
- Saxe-Coburg, Duke of, *Memoirs*, 75, 116.
- Schouler, James, *History of the United States*, 260.

- Schuyler, Eugene, *American Diplomacy*, 268.
- Scoble, A. R., *Memoirs of Philip de Commines*, 68.
- Scotland in the fifteenth century, 161.
- Scott, E. H., *Federalist and other Constitutional Papers*, 193; *Madison's Debates in the Federal Constitution*, 195.
- Scudder, H. E., *Men and Manners in America One Hundred Years Ago*, 187, 222.
- Scythians, Herodotus on, 37.
- Seamen, Elizabethan, exploits, 164-165, 205.
- Sears, E. H., *Political Growth in Nineteenth Century*, 61.
- Secession, ordinances, 259; discussions, 259; outbreak, 259. —See also Civil War, Nullification.
- Seignobos, Charles, *Introduction to the Study of History*, 17.
- Senior, N. W., *Conversations with Thiers, Guizot, and other Distinguished Persons*, 76, 114; *Journals*, 76, 114.
- Sertorius, 51.
- Shambaugh, B. F., *Documentary Material relating to Iowa*, 242.
- Sheldon, M. D., *Studies in General History*, 21.
- Sherard, R. H., *Méneval's Memoirs*, 72.
- Sherman, John, *Sherman Letters*, 197, 260, 266.
- Sherman, R. S., *Sherman Letters*, 197.
- Sherman, W. T., *Sherman Letters*, 197, 260, 266; *Memoirs*, 198, 260.
- Siebert, W. H., *Underground Railroad*, 249.
- Shilleto, A. R., *Pausanias's Description of Greece*, 29.
- Shuckburgh, E. S., *Letters of Cicero*, 25; *Histories of Polybius*, 31.
- Slavery in America, colonial, 210, 224; Missouri Compromise, 245; conditions, 249, 250, 257; abolitionism, 250-251; slave trade, 251; fugitives, 251, 254; territorial, 251-257, emancipation, 261. —See also America.
- Smart, Christopher, *Works of Horace*, 28.
- Smedes, S. D., *Memorials of a Southern Planter*, 198, 249.
- Smith, Edward, *Foreign Visitors in England*, 127, 169.
- Smith, E. J., *Selections from Lucian*, 29.
- Smith, G. G., *Days of James IV*, 127, 161.
- Smith, G. W., *Metternich's Memoirs* 72.

- Smith, John, *True Relation*, 209; *General Historie*, 209.
- Smith, J. H., *Troubadours at Home*, 76, 87, 89.
- Social conditions, Greek, 34-35, 40, 41-42; early German, 58, 143; of the French monarchy, 102-103; in Elizabethan England, 138-139, 163-165; English, during the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, 138, 139, 158-159; after the Restoration, 140, 170-172; colonial, 210, 221-224; post-Revolutionary in America, 238-239; after the War of 1812, 244; during Jackson's control, 246-247; North and South, 257-258, 262; recent, in America, 266-268.—See also Economic conditions, Feudalism.
- Sources, historical, availableness, 2-5; as a foundation, 5-7; relation to text-books, 7; and interest, 8-11; and encouragement of individuality, 10; as an intellectual training, 11-12, 17; and historical skepticism, 15-16.—See also Table of Contents.
- Socrates, 42-43.—See also Greece.
- Solon, 36.—See also Greece.
- Sophocles, *Seven Plays*, 32; *Tragedies*, 32, 40.
- Sorel, Albert, *Mémoires de Soldats*, 111; on Talleyrand's *Memoirs*, 111.
- Spanish, Armada, 165; discoveries in America, 202-204; American War, 269-270.
- Sparta, early history, 38; period of supremacy, 42-44.—See also Greece.
- Spillan, D., *History of Rome by Titus Livius*, 29.
- Stainer, C. L., *Cromwell's Speeches*, 134.
- Stamp Act, text, 227.
- States, organization, 231.—See also America.
- Stedman, E. C., *Library of American Literature*, 187.
- Stephen of England, 147, 148.
- Stephen, H. L., *State Trials*, 128, 163, 168, 171.
- Stephens, A. H., *War between the States*, 260.
- Stephens, H. M., *Syllabus in Modern European History*, 61; *Select Documents of English Constitutional History*, 121.
- Stewart, A., *Plutarch's Lives*, 31.
- Stubbs, William, *Select Charters*, 120 n.
- Suetonius, *Lives of the Twelve Cæsars*, 32, 52.
- Sulla, 51.
- Sully, Duke of, *Memoirs*, 76, 99-102.

- Swan, Charles, *Gesta Romanorum*, 70; *Select Tales from the Gesta Romanorum*, 70.
- Swedish settlement in America, 207.
- Symonds, J. A., *Life of Benvenuto Cellini*, 68, 92; on Dante, 89; on Machiavelli, 93.
- Syracuse, Tyranny at, 42.—See also Greece.
- TACITUS**, preference as a source, 20; *Agricola* and *Germania*, 32, 53, 140, 142, 143; *Annals* and *History*, 32, 53.
- Taine, H. A., on St. Simon's *Memoirs*, 103.
- Talleyrand, Prince de, *Memoirs*, 76, 111; *Correspondence during the Congress of Vienna*, 76, 112.
- Tarbell, I. M., *Napoleon's Addresses*, 74.
- Tariff in United States, early debates, 239; later controversy, 247, 265.
- Taswell-Langmead, T. P., *English Constitutional History*, 128.
- Taussig, F. W., *State Papers and Speeches on the Tariff*, 239.
- Taylor, W. F., England under Charles II, 127.
- Territories, United States, under the Confederation, 233; purchase of Louisiana, 242; question of Oregon, 242, 253-254; purchase of Florida, 244; and slavery, 251-257; annexation of Texas, 252; annexation of California, 253; constitutional decisions, 256, 269; recent expansion, 269.
- Terry, C. S., *Rising of 1745*, 127; *Chevalier de St. George*, 127.
- Texas, annexation, 252.
- Text-books, relation to sources, 7.
- Thebes, supremacy in Greece, 44.—See also Greece.
- Themistocles, 38.—See also Greece.
- Thiébault, Baron, *Memoirs*, 111.
- Thompson, A. B., announced source-book of Greek History, 22.
- Thompson, Edith, *Wars of York and Lancaster*, 127, 158.
- Thomson, Alexander, *Lives of the Twelve Cæsars by Suetonius*, 32.
- Thucydides, preference as a source, *History of the Peloponnesian War*, 33, 39-40.
- Tiberius, 53.
- Timoleon, 42.—See also Greece.
- Titian, 94.—See also Renaissance.
- Tocqueville, Alexis de, *Democracy in America*, 198.
- Towns, English, 155.



Trade, conditions of colonial, 218.—See also each country by name.

Travel, bibliography of American, 178.

Tremain, Mary, *Survey of English History*, 128.

Trollope, Mrs. Frances, *Domestic Manners of the Americans*, 199.

Troubadours, 89.—See also Literature.

Tuckerman, H. T., *America and her Commentators*, 178.

Turner, S. E., *Eginhard's Life of Charlemagne*, 69.

Turpin, Joannes, *Charles the Great and Orlando*, 83, 87.

Tyler, M. C., *Literary History of the Revolution*, 226.

UNION, plans for colonial, 220-221, 232; First Continental Congress, 228.—See also Confederation, Federal Constitution, Italy.

United States, Department of State, *Treaties and Conventions*, 188, 237, 238; organization of the federal government, 237-240.—See also America.

VASARI, Giorgio, *Lives of Eminent Painters, Sculptors, and Architects*, 76, 94.—See also Renaissance.

Vermont.—See New Hampshire, New York.

Verrall, M. de G., *Mythology and Monuments of Ancient Athens*, 29.

Verrazano, Giovanni da, voyage, 206.

Vespucci, Amerigo, voyages, 203.

Victor Emmanuel of Italy, 116.—See also Italy.

Vinci, Leonardo da, 94.—See also Renaissance.

Virgil, *Aeneid, Eclogues, and Georgics*, 33, 53.

Virginia, settlement, 209-210.—See also Colonies.

Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions, 240-241.

Voltaire, *Letters on England*, 77, 104.

WACE, Henry, *First Principles of the Reformation*, 72.

Wagner, Leopold, *Modern Political Orations*, 129, 176.

Walton, J. S., *Liberty Bell Leaflets*, 179.

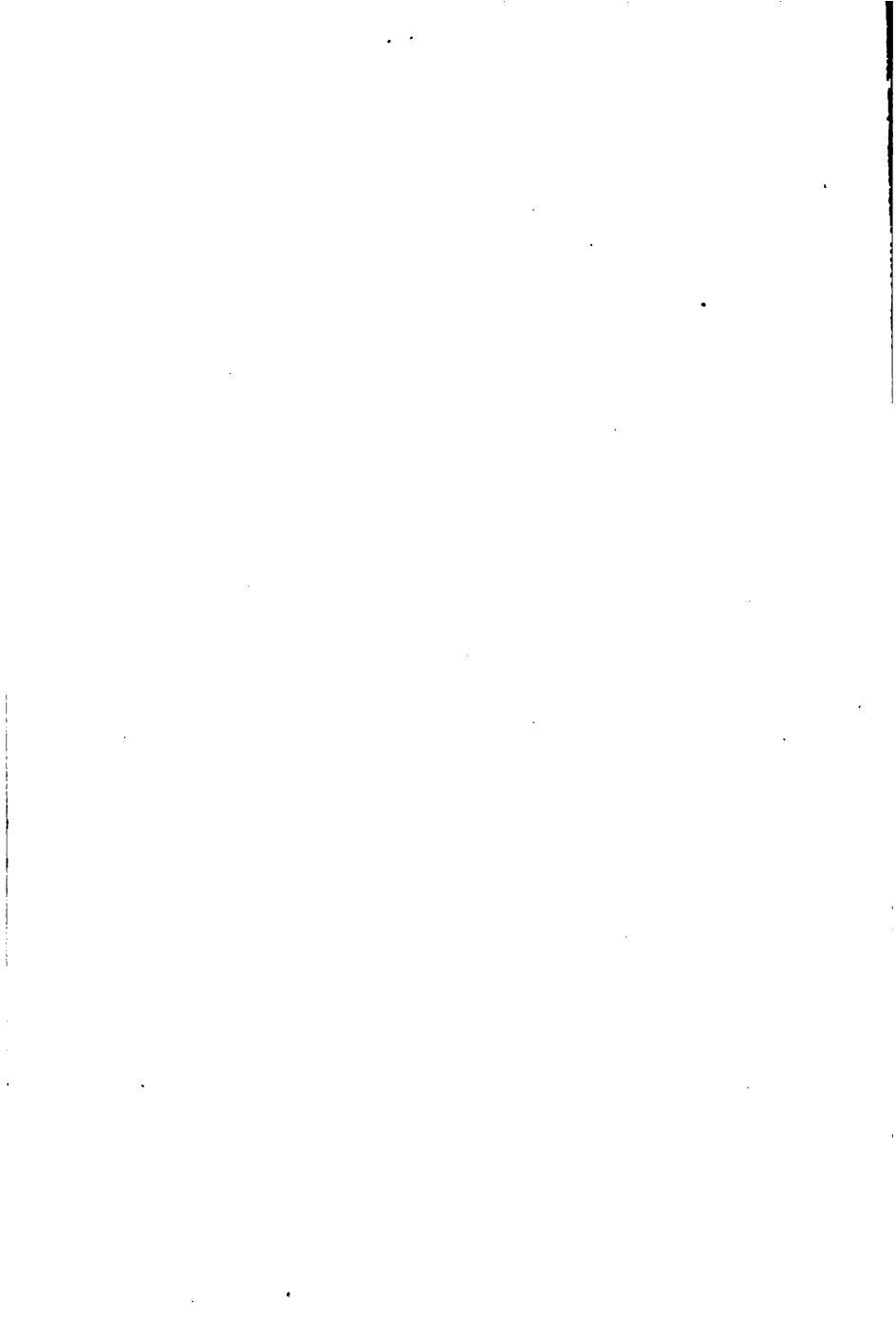
War of the Roses, 157-158.—See also England.

War of 1812, 243.—See also America.

Warner, C. D., *Library of the World's Best Literature*, 65.

- Warner, G. T., *English History Illustrated from Original Sources*, 129.
- Warren, K. M., Langland's *Vision of Piers the Plowman*, 138.
- Warville, Brissot de, *New Travels in the United States*, 199.
- Washburne, E. B., *Recollections of a Minister to France*, 77, 114.
- Washington, George, *Works*, 229; administration, 239-240.
- Washington, H. A., Jefferson's *Writings*, 71.
- Waterloo, battle, 112.—See also Europe.
- Watson, J. S., *Justin, Cornelius Nepos, and Eutropius, literally translated*, 28; *Sallust, Florus, and Vellius Paterculus, literally translated*, 32; Xenophon's *Anabasis, and Memorabilia of Socrates*, 33.
- Wat Tyler's Rebellion, 159.
- Webster, Daniel, Bunker Hill oration, 245; debate with Hayne, 247-248; other orations, 248.
- Werner, A., Garibaldi's *Autobiography*, 70.
- Wharton, Francis, *Digest of the International Law of the United States*, 188, 237.
- Wheatley, H. B., Evelyn's *Diary*, 134; Pepys's *Diary*, 139.
- Whiston, William, *Works of Flavius Josephus*, 28.
- Whitcomb, Merrick, *Literary Source-Book of the Italian Renaissance*, 64, 77, 90; *Literary Source-Book of the German Renaissance*, 64, 77, 94; announced series of sixteenth century classics, 64; *Select Colloquies of Erasmus*, 69, *Period of Early Reformation in Germany*, 96; *Period of the Later Reformation*, 97; *French Philosophers of the Eighteenth Century*, 104; *Typical Cahiers of 1789*, 104.
- White, Horace, *Roman History of Appian*, 23.
- White, J. S., *Boys' and Girls' Herodotus*, 26; *Boys' and Girls' Pliny*, 30; *Boys' and Girls' Plutarch*, 31.
- Whitman, Sidney, *Conversations with Prince Bismarck*, 67.
- Wilcox, D. F., *Study of City Government*, 267.
- William I of England, character and conquest, 147; constitutional measures, 150-151.—See also England.
- William Rufus of England, 147, 148.
- William of Malmesbury, *Chronicles of the Kings of England*, 141, 146, 147.

- Williams, Edwin, *Statesman's Manual*, 187.
- Winship, G. P., authority on Cabot, 204.
- Winsor, Justin, on Bradford's *History*, 189; *Narrative and Critical History*, 200, 203.
- Winthrop, John, *History of New England*, 199.
- Withington, Lothrop, *Elizabethan England*, 137.
- Wolfson, A. M., source references in his *Essentials of Ancient History*, 19.
- Wolsey, Cardinal, 160.
- Wright, C. D., *Outline of Practical Sociology*, 266.
- Writs of Assistance, 218, 227.
- Wyatt, A. J., *Tale of Beowulf*, 132.
- Wyclif, 126, 159.—See also England.
- Wyer, J. I., *Bibliography of the Study and Teaching of History*, 17.
- XENOPHON, *Works*, 33; *Anabasis*, and *Memorabilia of Socrates*, 33, 42; *Hellenica*, 43.
- YONGE, C. D., *Ammianus Marcellinus' History of Rome*, 23; *Select Orations of Cicero*, 25.
- Young, Arthur, *Travels in France*, 77, 104.



## American History Told by Contemporaries

Edited by ALBERT BUSHNELL HART, Ph.D., Professor of History  
in Harvard University.

In 4 volumes. Cloth. 12mo. Each \$2.00.

- Vol. I. Era of Colonization, 1493-1689.
- Vol. II. Building of the Republic, 1689-1783.
- Vol. III. National Expansion, 1783-1845.
- Vol. IV. Welding of the Nation, 1845-1897.

## Source Book of American History

For Schools and Readers

Edited by ALBERT BUSHNELL HART, Ph.D., author of "American History Told by Contemporaries." Cloth. 12mo. 60 cents *net*.

"The book, as the author intends, is abundantly suggestive. But at the same time it is in its facts good history, and so skillfully and admirably arranged as to arouse in every young reader a desire for wider reading upon the interesting themes broached. To the teacher well up in history, it will be found a rich mine of thought."—*Chicago Inter-Ocean*.

## Select Charters and Other Documents

Illustrative of American History, 1606-1775

Edited by WILLIAM MACDONALD, Professor of History in Bowdoin College. Cloth. 8vo. \$2.00 *net*.

"Professor MacDonald shows good judgment in his selections, and his book should materially assist the teaching of American history . . . it will be a great convenience everywhere."—*The Nation*.

## Select Documents

Illustrative of the History of the United States, 1776-1861

Edited by WILLIAM MACDONALD, Editor of "Select Charters," etc. Cloth. 8vo. \$2.25 *net*.

"An exceptionally valuable book to students of American history, and, indeed, to all persons who care to discuss our present problems in their historical bearings. . . . It is an invaluable book for every reference library."—*The Outlook*.

## A History of the United States for Beginners

For Use in Elementary Schools. By W. B. POWELL, A.M.,  
Superintendent of Public Schools, Washington, D. C.

Cloth. 12mo. 65 cents *net*.

---

## THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

66 Fifth Avenue, NEW YORK

378 Wabash Ave., Chicago  
100 Boylson Street, Boston

140 Whitehall Street, Atlanta  
319-325 Sansome St., San Francisco

## A Short History of the United States

For School Use

By EDWARD CHANNING, author of "A Student's History of the United States," etc. 12mo. Half Leather. 90 cents *net*.

"It is an admirable presentation of the origin and growth of our nation. From cover to cover it is made intensely interesting, not only by striking illustrations and complete maps, but by the arrangement of the text and the facts presented in a clear, logical manner. The references to other text-books in history is a commendable feature. I fully agree with the author's statement in the preface as to the best method of studying the history of our country."

—N. G. KINGSLEY, *Principal of Doyle-Avenue Grammar School*,  
Providence, R. I.

## A History of England

For High Schools and Academies

By KATHARINE COMAN, Ph.B., Wellesley College, and ELIZABETH KIMBALL KENDALL, M.A., Wellesley College.

"It is in my judgment by far the best history of England that has yet been published. The other books in the field are either too meagre or too advanced. This book is just what has long been needed, and ought to be largely introduced."—Prof. RICHARD HUDSON, *University of Michigan*, Ann Arbor, Mich.

## Topics on Greek and Roman History

By ARTHUR L. GOODRICH, Free Academy, Utica, N. Y. Intended for Use in Secondary Schools. A new and revised edition. Cloth. 12mo. 60 cents *net*.

A full and systematic scheme for the study of Greek and Roman History by the topical method, adapted for use in accordance with the latest recommendations of the Committee and Conferences on the study of History.

## The Growth of the American Nation

By HARRY PRATT JUDSON, LL.D., Head Professor of Political Science in the University of Chicago. Cloth. 12mo. \$1.00 *net*.

The object of this work is to point out the cardinal facts in the growth of the American nation in such a way as to show clearly the orderly development of national life.

---

## THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

66 Fifth Avenue, NEW YORK

378 Wabash Ave., Chicago  
100 Boylston Street, Boston

140 Whitehall Street, Atlanta  
319-325 Sansome St., San Francisco

# EUROPEAN HISTORY

## An Outline of its Development

By GEORGE BURTON ADAMS, Yale University, New Haven, Conn.

8vo. Half Leather. \$1.40 net.

"I think the Adams 'European History' is the best single-volume text-book in general European history by an American author. In style and illustration it is interesting; its well-chosen references contribute to develop the students' taste for historical reading; and its suggestive questions, etc., are most helpful to the teacher."

—Prof. W. H. SIEBERT, *Ohio State University*, Columbus, Ohio.

## The Growth of the French Nation

By GEORGE BURTON ADAMS, author of "European History," etc.

12mo. Cloth. \$1.25 net.

"Mr. Adams has dealt in a fascinating way with the chief features of the Middle Age, and his book is rendered the more attractive by some excellent illustrations. He traces the history of France from the conquests by the Romans and Franks down to the presidency of M. Felix Faure, and has always something to say that is clear and to the point; Mr. Adams seems to us to have seized the salient features of the *growth* of the French nation, and to have fulfilled the promise of his title."—*Educational Review*.

## A Student's History of the United States

By EDWARD CHANNING, Professor of History, Harvard University.

With Suggestions to Teachers by ANNA BOYNTON THOMPSON,

Thayer Academy, South Braintree, Mass.

8vo. Half Leather. \$1.40 net.

"Your book has given us good satisfaction. It is the best school history I know of to give the student a clear conception of the origin and the development of our institutions. It presents to him lucidly and forcefully the questions which have been either the sectional or the party issues of the past; it portrays in a singularly felicitous manner our wonderful growth in population and resources."

—M. B. PRICE, *Worcester Academy*, Worcester, Mass.

---

## THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

66 Fifth Avenue, NEW YORK

378 Wabash Ave., Chicago

100 Boylston Street, Boston

140 Whitehall Street, Atlanta

319-325 Sansome St., San Francisco

# A HISTORY OF GREECE

For High Schools and Academies

By GEORGE WILLIS BOTSFORD, Ph.D., Instructor in the History of Greece and Rome in Harvard University.

8vo. Half Leather. \$1.10 net.

"There are many valuable books for the teacher, but few text-books for the student that are at once interesting and accurate. Botsford's 'Greece' is more. It is the *choicest selection of facts from the best sources*, so presented that the student may taste the sources. That is where the book especially meets a great end. The marginal references are wonderfully helpful. The illustrations could not be better.

—EMILY F. PAINE, *Miss Spence's School*, New York City.

# A HISTORY OF ROME

For High Schools and Academies

By GEORGE WILLIS BOTSFORD, Ph.D., author of "A History of Greece."

8vo. Half Leather. \$1.10 net.

## TEACHABLE QUALITIES

1. Treatment of the external and internal history of the Republic in separate chapters; this conduces to simplicity, continuity of thought, and hence interest.

2. Each chapter corresponds with a period or epoch; this helps the pupil to gain a distinct conception of each period, and to a correct arrangement and subordination of events. In most books the chapters are arbitrary divisions.

3. Marginal headings—sufficiently bold to be used as topics, but they do not interrupt the thought, or break the interest, as they would were they extended across the page.

4. Frequently quotations of sources; makes the subject more vivid and real.

5. Concrete treatment of the constitution. This book represents the people, senators, and magistrates as living, thinking, acting, governing, etc. It does not treat Rome as an abstract legal or political system, but as a city made up of human beings.

6. Movement—in the entire book there is no isolated paragraph; the thought is continuous throughout and the verbs are in the active voice.

7. The outline of the Republican constitution, p. 353 ff., serves as an example of what should be done in the preparation of lessons, and at the same time is a complete, logical presentation of the only really difficult subject in Roman history.

8. The "Studies" require a thorough digestion of the material, and one who works them out faithfully will be able to pass the examination for admission to any college.

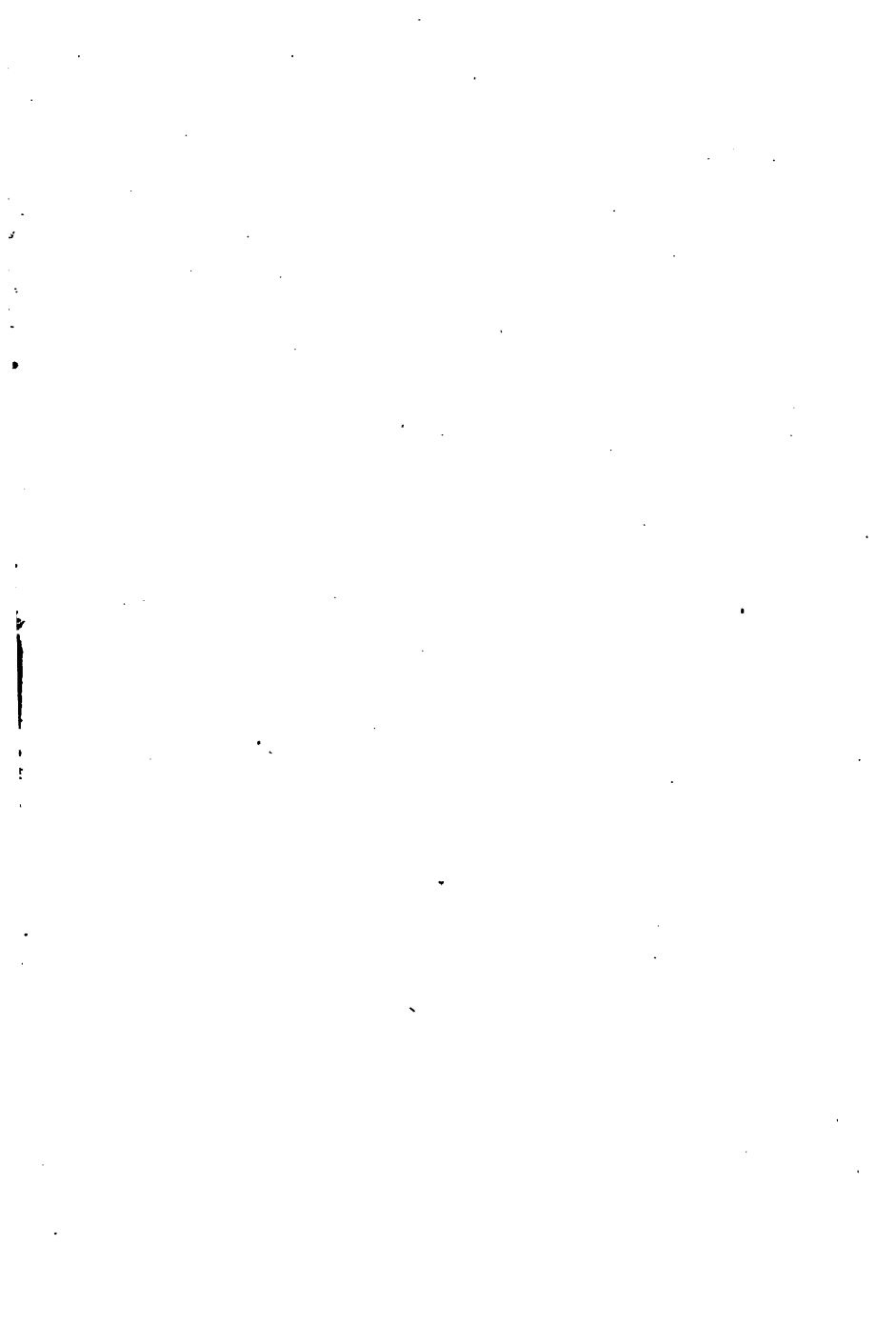
## THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

66 Fifth Avenue, NEW YORK

378 Wabash Ave., Chicago  
100 Boylston Street, Boston

140 Whitehall Street, Atlanta  
319-325 Sansome St., San Francisco









3 2044 029 557 410